
AWS Directory Service

Administration Guide

Version 1.0



AWS Directory Service: Administration Guide

Copyright © 2020 Amazon Web Services, Inc. and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Amazon's trademarks and trade dress may not be used in connection with any product or service that is not Amazon's, in any manner that is likely to cause confusion among customers, or in any manner that disparages or discredits Amazon. All other trademarks not owned by Amazon are the property of their respective owners, who may or may not be affiliated with, connected to, or sponsored by Amazon.

Table of Contents

What is AWS Directory Service?	1
Which to Choose	1
AWS Directory Service Options	1
Working with Amazon EC2	4
Setting Up AWS Directory Service	5
Sign Up for an AWS Account	5
Create an IAM User	5
AWS Managed Microsoft AD	8
Getting Started	9
Prerequisites	9
Create Your Directory	10
What Gets Created	11
Admin Account	14
Key Concepts	15
Active Directory Schema	15
Patching and Maintenance	16
Group Managed Service Accounts	17
Kerberos Constrained Delegation	17
Use Cases	17
Use Case 1: Sign In to AWS Applications and Services with AD Credentials	19
Use Case 2: Manage Amazon EC2 Instances	19
Use Case 3: Provide Directory Services to Your AD-Aware Workloads	19
Use Case 4: SSO to Office 365 and Other Cloud Applications	19
Use Case 5: Extend Your On-Premises AD to the AWS Cloud	20
Use Case 6: Share Your Directory to Seamlessly Join Amazon EC2 Instances to a Domain Across AWS Accounts	20
How To...	20
Secure Your Directory	21
Monitor Your Directory	32
Share Your Directory	38
Join an EC2 Instance to Your Directory	46
Manage users and groups	59
Connect Your Existing AD Infrastructure	64
Extend Your Schema	82
Maintain Your Directory	86
Grant Access to AWS Resources	90
Enable Access to AWS Applications and Services	94
Enable Access to the AWS Management Console	102
Deploy Additional Domain Controllers	103
Migrate Users from AD to AWS Managed Microsoft AD	105
Best Practices	105
Setting Up: Prerequisites	105
Setting Up: Creating Your Directory	107
Using Your Directory	107
Managing Your Directory	108
Programming Your Applications	109
Limits	109
Increase Your Limit	110
Application Compatibility	110
Compatibility Guidelines	111
Known Incompatible Applications	112
AWS Managed Microsoft AD Test Lab Tutorials	112
Tutorial: Set Up Your Base AWS Managed Microsoft AD Test Lab	112
Tutorial: Create a Trust From AWS Managed Microsoft AD to a Self-Managed AD Install on EC2 ..	121

Troubleshooting	126
Password recovery	126
DNS Troubleshooting	126
Linux Domain Join Errors	127
Schema Extension Errors	128
Trust Creation Status Reasons	130
Active Directory Connector	131
Getting Started	131
AD Connector Prerequisites	131
Create an AD Connector	141
What Gets Created	142
How To...	142
Secure Your Directory	142
Monitor Your Directory	144
Join an EC2 Instance to Your Directory	146
Maintain Your Directory	148
Update DNS for Your AD Connector	149
Best Practices	150
Setting Up: Prerequisites	150
Programming Your Applications	151
Using Your Directory	152
Limits	152
Increase Your Limit	110
Application Compatibility	153
Troubleshooting	153
Seamless domain join for EC2 instances stopped working	153
I receive a "Unable to Authenticate" error when using AWS applications to search for users or groups	154
I receive a "Authentication failed" error when querying users and groups in my domain through AD Connector	154
I receive a "DNS unavailable" error when I try to connect to my on-premises directory	154
I receive a "Connectivity issues detected" error when I try to connect to my on-premises directory	154
I receive an "SRV record" error when I try to connect to my on-premises directory	155
My directory is stuck in the "Requested" state	155
I receive an "AZ Constrained" error when I create a directory	155
Some of my users cannot authenticate with my directory	155
I receive an "Invalid Credentials" error when the service account used by AD Connector attempts to authenticate	155
Simple Active Directory	156
Getting Started	157
Simple AD Prerequisites	157
Create a Simple AD Directory	158
What Gets Created	159
Configure DNS	159
How To...	160
Manage users and groups	160
Monitor Your Directory	165
Join an EC2 Instance to Your Directory	167
Maintain Your Directory	180
Enable Access to AWS Applications and Services	183
Enable Access to the AWS Management Console	191
Tutorial: Create a Simple AD Directory	193
Prerequisites	193
Step 1: Create and Configure Your VPC	193
Step 2: Create Your Simple AD Directory	195
Best Practices	196

Setting Up: Prerequisites	196
Setting Up: Creating Your Directory	197
Programming Your Applications	198
Limits	198
Increase Your Limit	110
Application Compatibility	199
Troubleshooting	200
Password recovery	200
I receive a "KDC can't fulfill requested option" error when adding a user to Simple AD	200
I am not able to update the DNS name or IP address of an instance joined to my domain (DNS dynamic update)	200
I cannot log onto SQL Server using a SQL Server account	200
My directory is stuck in the "Requested" state	201
I receive an "AZ Constrained" error when I create a directory	201
Some of my users cannot authenticate with my directory	201
Directory Status Reasons	201
Security	204
Identity and Access Management	205
Authentication	205
Access Control	206
Overview of Managing Access	206
Using Identity-Based Policies (IAM Policies)	210
AWS Directory Service API Permissions Reference	215
Logging and Monitoring	216
Compliance Validation	216
Resilience	216
Infrastructure Security	217
Service Level Agreement	218
Region Availability	219
Browser Compatibility	221
What is TLS?	222
Which TLS versions are supported by AWS SSO	222
How do I enable supported TLS versions in my browser	222
Document History	223

What Is AWS Directory Service?

AWS Directory Service provides multiple ways to use Amazon Cloud Directory and Microsoft Active Directory (AD) with other AWS services. Directories store information about users, groups, and devices, and administrators use them to manage access to information and resources. AWS Directory Service provides multiple directory choices for customers who want to use existing Microsoft AD or Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP)–aware applications in the cloud. It also offers those same choices to developers who need a directory to manage users, groups, devices, and access.

Which to Choose

You can choose directory services with the features and scalability that best meets your needs. Use the following table to help you determine which AWS Directory Service directory option works best for your organization.

What do you need to do?	Recommended AWS Directory Service options
I need Active Directory or LDAP for my applications in the cloud	<p>Select AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory (Standard Edition or Enterprise Edition) if you need an actual Microsoft Active Directory in the AWS Cloud that supports Active Directory–aware workloads, or AWS applications and services such as Amazon WorkSpaces and Amazon QuickSight, or you need LDAP support for Linux applications.</p> <p>Use AD Connector if you only need to allow your on-premises users to log in to AWS applications and services with their Active Directory credentials. You can also use AD Connector to join Amazon EC2 instances to your existing Active Directory domain.</p> <p>Use Simple AD if you need a low-scale, low-cost directory with basic Active Directory compatibility that supports Samba 4–compatible applications, or you need LDAP compatibility for LDAP-aware applications.</p>
I develop cloud applications that manage hierarchical data with complex relationships	Use Amazon Cloud Directory if you need a cloud-scale directory to share and control access to hierarchical data between your applications.
I develop SaaS applications	Use Amazon Cognito if you develop high-scale SaaS applications and need a scalable directory to manage and authenticate your subscribers and that works with social media identities.

AWS Directory Service Options

AWS Directory Service includes several directory types to choose from. For more information, select one of the following tabs:

AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory

Also known as AWS Managed Microsoft AD, AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory is powered by an actual Microsoft Windows Server Active Directory (AD), managed by AWS in the AWS Cloud. It enables you to migrate a broad range of Active Directory–aware applications to the AWS Cloud. AWS Managed Microsoft AD works with Microsoft SharePoint, Microsoft SQL Server Always On Availability Groups, and many .NET applications. It also supports AWS managed applications and services including [Amazon WorkSpaces](#), [Amazon WorkDocs](#), [Amazon QuickSight](#), [Amazon Chime](#), [Amazon Connect](#), and [Amazon Relational Database Service for Microsoft SQL Server](#) (RDS for SQL Server).

AWS Managed Microsoft AD is approved for applications in the AWS Cloud that are subject to [U.S. Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act \(HIPAA\)](#) or [Payment Card Industry Data Security Standard \(PCI DSS\)](#) compliance when you [enable compliance for your directory](#).

All compatible applications work with user credentials that you store in AWS Managed Microsoft AD, or you can [connect to your existing AD infrastructure](#) with a trust and use credentials from an Active Directory running on-premises or on EC2 Windows. If you [join EC2 instances to your AWS Managed Microsoft AD](#), your users can access Windows workloads in the AWS Cloud with the same Windows single sign-on (SSO) experience as when they access workloads in your on-premises network.

AWS Managed Microsoft AD also supports federated use cases using Active Directory credentials. Alone, AWS Managed Microsoft AD enables you to sign in to the [AWS Management Console](#). With [AWS Single Sign-On](#), you can also obtain short-term credentials for use with the AWS SDK and CLI, and use preconfigured SAML integrations to sign in to many cloud applications. By adding Azure AD Connect, and optionally Active Directory Federation Service (AD FS), you can sign in to Microsoft Office 365 and other cloud applications with credentials stored in AWS Managed Microsoft AD.

The service includes key features that enable you to [extend your schema](#), [manage password policies](#), and [enable secure LDAP communications](#) through Secure Socket Layer (SSL)/Transport Layer Security (TLS). You can also [enable multi-factor authentication \(MFA\) for AWS Managed Microsoft AD](#) to provide an additional layer of security when users access AWS applications from the Internet. Because Active Directory is an LDAP directory, you can also use AWS Managed Microsoft AD for Linux Secure Shell (SSH) authentication and for other LDAP-enabled applications.

AWS provides monitoring, daily snapshots, and recovery as part of the service—you [add users and groups to AWS Managed Microsoft AD](#), and administer Group Policy using familiar Active Directory tools running on a Windows computer joined to the AWS Managed Microsoft AD domain. You can also scale the directory by [deploying additional domain controllers](#) and help improve application performance by distributing requests across a larger number of domain controllers.

AWS Managed Microsoft AD is available in two editions: Standard and Enterprise.

- **Standard Edition:** AWS Managed Microsoft AD (Standard Edition) is optimized to be a primary directory for small and midsize businesses with up to 5,000 employees. It provides you enough storage capacity to support up to 30,000* directory objects, such as users, groups, and computers.
- **Enterprise Edition:** AWS Managed Microsoft AD (Enterprise Edition) is designed to support enterprise organizations with up to 500,000* directory objects.

* Upper limits are approximations. Your directory may support more or less directory objects depending on the size of your objects and the behavior and performance needs of your applications.

When to use

AWS Managed Microsoft AD is your best choice if you need actual Active Directory features to support AWS applications or Windows workloads, including Amazon Relational Database Service for Microsoft SQL Server. It's also best if you want a standalone AD in the AWS Cloud that supports

Office 365 or you need an LDAP directory to support your Linux applications. For more information, see [AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 8\)](#).

AD Connector

AD Connector is a proxy service that provides an easy way to connect compatible AWS applications, such as Amazon WorkSpaces, Amazon QuickSight, and [Amazon EC2](#) for Windows Server instances, to your existing on-premises Microsoft Active Directory. With AD Connector, you can simply [add one service account](#) to your Active Directory. AD Connector also eliminates the need of directory synchronization or the cost and complexity of hosting a federation infrastructure.

When you add users to AWS applications such as Amazon QuickSight, AD Connector reads your existing Active Directory to create lists of users and groups to select from. When users log in to the AWS applications, AD Connector forwards sign-in requests to your on-premises Active Directory domain controllers for authentication. AD Connector works with many AWS applications and services including [Amazon WorkSpaces](#), [Amazon WorkDocs](#), [Amazon QuickSight](#), [Amazon Chime](#), [Amazon Connect](#), and [Amazon WorkMail](#). You can also [join your EC2 Windows instances](#) to your on-premises Active Directory domain through AD Connector using [seamless domain join](#). AD Connector also allows your users to access the AWS Management Console and manage AWS resources by logging in with their existing Active Directory credentials. AD Connector is not compatible with RDS SQL Server.

You can also use AD Connector to [enable multi-factor authentication](#) (MFA) for your AWS application users by connecting it to your existing RADIUS-based MFA infrastructure. This provides an additional layer of security when users access AWS applications.

With AD Connector, you continue to manage your Active Directory as you do now. For example, you add new users and groups and update passwords using standard Active Directory administration tools in your on-premises Active Directory. This helps you consistently enforce your security policies, such as password expiration, password history, and account lockouts, whether users are accessing resources on premises or in the AWS Cloud.

When to use

AD Connector is your best choice when you want to use your existing on-premises directory with compatible AWS services. For more information, see [Active Directory Connector \(p. 131\)](#).

Simple AD

Simple AD is a Microsoft Active Directory–*compatible* directory from AWS Directory Service that is powered by Samba 4. Simple AD supports basic Active Directory features such as user accounts, group memberships, joining a Linux domain or Windows based EC2 instances, Kerberos-based SSO, and group policies. AWS provides monitoring, daily snap-shots, and recovery as part of the service.

Simple AD is a standalone directory in the cloud, where you create and manage user identities and manage access to applications. You can use many familiar Active Directory–aware applications and tools that require basic Active Directory features. Simple AD is compatible with the following AWS applications: [Amazon WorkSpaces](#), [Amazon WorkDocs](#), [Amazon QuickSight](#), and [Amazon WorkMail](#). You can also sign in to the AWS Management Console with Simple AD user accounts and to manage AWS resources.

Simple AD does not support multi-factor authentication (MFA), trust relationships, DNS dynamic update, schema extensions, communication over LDAPS, PowerShell AD cmdlets, or FSMO role transfer. Simple AD is not compatible with RDS SQL Server. Customers who require the features of an actual Microsoft Active Directory, or who envision using their directory with RDS SQL Server should use AWS Managed Microsoft AD instead. Please verify your required applications are fully compatible with Samba 4 before using Simple AD. For more information, see <https://www.samba.org>.

When to use

You can use Simple AD as a standalone directory in the cloud to support Windows workloads that need basic AD features, compatible AWS applications, or to support Linux workloads that need LDAP service. For more information, see [Simple Active Directory \(p. 156\)](#).

Amazon Cloud Directory

Amazon Cloud Directory is a cloud-native directory that can store hundreds of millions of application-specific objects with multiple relationships and schemas. Use Amazon Cloud Directory if you need a highly scalable directory store for your application's hierarchical data.

When to use

Amazon Cloud Directory is a great choice when you need to build application directories such as device registries, catalogs, social networks, organization structures, and network topologies. For more information, see [What is Amazon Cloud Directory?](#) in the *Amazon Cloud Directory Developer Guide*.

Amazon Cognito

Amazon Cognito is a user directory that adds sign-up and sign-in to your mobile app or web application using Amazon Cognito User Pools.

When to use

You can also use Amazon Cognito when you need to create custom registration fields and store that metadata in your user directory. This fully managed service scales to support hundreds of millions of users. For more information, see [Creating and Managing User Pools](#).

See [Region Availability for AWS Directory Service \(p. 219\)](#) for a list of supported directory types per region.

Working with Amazon EC2

A basic understanding of Amazon EC2 is essential to using AWS Directory Service. We recommend that you begin by reading the following topics:

- [What is Amazon EC2?](#) in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide for Windows Instances*.
- [Launching EC2 Instances](#) in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide for Windows Instances*.
- [Security Groups](#) in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide for Windows Instances*.
- [What is Amazon VPC?](#) in the *Amazon VPC User Guide*.
- [Adding a Hardware Virtual Private Gateway to Your VPC](#) in the *Amazon VPC User Guide*.

Setting Up AWS Directory Service

To work with AWS Directory Service, you need to meet the prerequisites for AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory, AD Connector, or Simple AD. For more information, see [AWS Managed Microsoft AD Prerequisites \(p. 9\)](#), [AD Connector Prerequisites \(p. 131\)](#), or [Simple AD Prerequisites \(p. 157\)](#).

If you haven't already done so, you'll also need to create an AWS account and use the AWS Identity and Access Management service to control access.

Topics

- [Sign Up for an AWS Account \(p. 5\)](#)
- [Create an IAM User \(p. 5\)](#)

Sign Up for an AWS Account

Your AWS account gives you access to all services, but you are charged only for the resources that you use.

If you do not have an AWS account, complete the following steps to create one.

To sign up for an AWS account

1. Open <https://portal.aws.amazon.com/billing/signup>.
2. Follow the online instructions.

Part of the sign-up procedure involves receiving a phone call and entering a verification code on the phone keypad.

Your root account credentials identify you to services in AWS and grant you unlimited use of your AWS resources, such as your WorkSpaces. To allow other users to manage AWS Directory Service resources without sharing your security credentials, use AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM). We recommend that everyone work as an IAM user, even the account owner. You should create an IAM user for yourself, give that IAM user administrative privileges, and use it for all your work.

Create an IAM User

The AWS Management Console requires your username and password so that the service can determine whether you have permission to access its resources. However, we recommend that you avoid accessing AWS using the credentials for your root AWS account; instead, we recommend that you use AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) to create an IAM user and add the IAM user to an IAM group with administrative permissions. This grants the IAM user administrative permissions. You then access the AWS Management Console using the credentials for the IAM user.

If you signed up for AWS but have not created an IAM user for yourself, you can create one using the IAM console.

To create an administrator user for yourself and add the user to an administrators group (console)

1. Use your AWS account email address and password to sign in as the *AWS account root user* to the IAM console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/iam/>.

Note

We strongly recommend that you adhere to the best practice of using the **Administrator** IAM user below and securely lock away the root user credentials. Sign in as the root user only to perform a few [account and service management tasks](#).

2. In the navigation pane, choose **Users** and then choose **Add user**.
3. For **User name**, enter **Administrator**.
4. Select the check box next to **AWS Management Console access**. Then select **Custom password**, and then enter your new password in the text box.
5. (Optional) By default, AWS requires the new user to create a new password when first signing in. You can clear the check box next to **User must create a new password at next sign-in** to allow the new user to reset their password after they sign in.
6. Choose **Next: Permissions**.
7. Under **Set permissions**, choose **Add user to group**.
8. Choose **Create group**.
9. In the **Create group** dialog box, for **Group name** enter **Administrators**.
10. Choose **Filter policies**, and then select **AWS managed -job function** to filter the table contents.
11. In the policy list, select the check box for **AdministratorAccess**. Then choose **Create group**.

Note

You must activate IAM user and role access to Billing before you can use the **AdministratorAccess** permissions to access the AWS Billing and Cost Management console. To do this, follow the instructions in [step 1 of the tutorial about delegating access to the billing console](#).

12. Back in the list of groups, select the check box for your new group. Choose **Refresh** if necessary to see the group in the list.
13. Choose **Next: Tags**.
14. (Optional) Add metadata to the user by attaching tags as key-value pairs. For more information about using tags in IAM, see [Tagging IAM Entities](#) in the *IAM User Guide*.
15. Choose **Next: Review** to see the list of group memberships to be added to the new user. When you are ready to proceed, choose **Create user**.

You can use this same process to create more groups and users and to give your users access to your AWS account resources. To learn about using policies that restrict user permissions to specific AWS resources, see [Access Management](#) and [Example Policies](#).

To sign in as this new IAM user, sign out of the AWS Management Console, then use the following URL, where *your_aws_account_id* is your AWS account number without the hyphens (for example, if your AWS account number is 1234-5678-9012, your AWS account ID is 123456789012):

```
https://your_aws_account_id.signin.aws.amazon.com/console/
```

Enter the IAM user name and password that you just created. When you're signed in, the navigation bar displays "*your_user_name @ your_aws_account_id*".

If you don't want the URL for your sign-in page to contain your AWS account ID, you can create an account alias. From the IAM dashboard, click **Customize** and enter an alias, such as your company name. To sign in after you create an account alias, use the following URL:

```
https://your_account_alias.signin.aws.amazon.com/console/
```

For more information about using IAM policies to control access to your AWS Directory Service resources, see [Using Identity-Based Policies \(IAM Policies\) for AWS Directory Service \(p. 210\)](#).

AWS Managed Microsoft AD

AWS Directory Service lets you run Microsoft Active Directory (AD) as a managed service. AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory, also referred to as AWS Managed Microsoft AD, is powered by Windows Server 2012 R2. When you select and launch this directory type, it is created as a highly available pair of domain controllers connected to your virtual private cloud (VPC). The domain controllers run in different Availability Zones in a region of your choice. Host monitoring and recovery, data replication, snapshots, and software updates are automatically configured and managed for you.

With AWS Managed Microsoft AD, you can run directory-aware workloads in the AWS Cloud, including Microsoft SharePoint and custom .NET and SQL Server-based applications. You can also configure a trust relationship between AWS Managed Microsoft AD in the AWS Cloud and your existing on-premises Microsoft Active Directory, providing users and groups with access to resources in either domain, using single sign-on (SSO).

AWS Directory Service makes it easy to set up and run directories in the AWS Cloud, or connect your AWS resources with an existing on-premises Microsoft Active Directory. Once your directory is created, you can use it for a variety of tasks:

- Manage users and groups
- Provide single sign-on to applications and services
- Create and apply group policy
- Securely connect to Amazon EC2 Linux and Windows instances
- Simplify the deployment and management of cloud-based Linux and Microsoft Windows workloads
- You can use AWS Managed Microsoft AD to enable multi-factor authentication by integrating with your existing RADIUS-based MFA infrastructure to provide an additional layer of security when users access AWS applications.

Read the topics in this section to get started creating a AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory, creating a trust relationship between AWS Managed Microsoft AD and your on-premises directories, and extending your AWS Managed Microsoft AD schema.

Topics

- [Getting Started with AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 9\)](#)
- [Key Concepts for AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 15\)](#)
- [Use Cases for AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 17\)](#)
- [How To Administer AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 20\)](#)
- [Best Practices for AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 105\)](#)
- [Limits for AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 109\)](#)
- [Application Compatibility Policy for AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 110\)](#)
- [AWS Managed Microsoft AD Test Lab Tutorials \(p. 112\)](#)
- [Troubleshooting AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 126\)](#)

Related AWS Security Blog Articles

- [How to Delegate Administration of Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Directory to Your On-Premises Active Directory Users](#)
- [How to Configure Even Stronger Password Policies to Help Meet Your Security Standards by Using AWS Directory Service for AWS Managed Microsoft AD](#)
- [How to Increase the Redundancy and Performance of Your AWS Directory Service for AWS Managed Microsoft AD by Adding Domain Controllers](#)

- [How to Enable the Use of Remote Desktops by Deploying Microsoft Remote Desktop Licensing Manager on AWS Managed Microsoft AD](#)
- [How to Access the AWS Management Console Using AWS Managed Microsoft AD and Your On-Premises Credentials](#)
- [How to Enable Multi-Factor Authentication for AWS Services by Using AWS Managed Microsoft AD and On-Premises Credentials](#)
- [How to Easily Log On to AWS Services by Using Your On-Premises Active Directory](#)

Getting Started with AWS Managed Microsoft AD

AWS Managed Microsoft AD creates a fully managed, Microsoft Active Directory in the AWS Cloud and is powered by Windows Server 2012 R2 and operates at the 2012 R2 functional level. When you create a directory with AWS Managed Microsoft AD, AWS Directory Service creates two domain controllers and adds the DNS service on your behalf. The domain controllers are created in different subnets in a VPC; this redundancy helps ensure that your directory remains accessible even if a failure occurs. If you need more domain controllers, you can add them later. For more information, see [Deploy Additional Domain Controllers \(p. 103\)](#).

Topics

- [AWS Managed Microsoft AD Prerequisites \(p. 9\)](#)
- [Create Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory \(p. 10\)](#)
- [What Gets Created \(p. 11\)](#)
- [Admin Account \(p. 14\)](#)

AWS Managed Microsoft AD Prerequisites

To create a AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory, you need a VPC with the following:

- At least two subnets. Each of the subnets must be in a different Availability Zone.
- The VPC must have default hardware tenancy.
- You cannot create a AWS Managed Microsoft AD in a VPC using addresses in the 198.18.0.0/15 address space.
- AWS Directory Service does not support using Network Address Translation (NAT) with Active Directory. Using NAT can result in replication errors.

If you need to integrate your AWS Managed Microsoft AD domain with an existing on-premises Active Directory domain, you must have the functional level for your on-premises domain set to Windows Server 2003 or higher.

AWS Directory Service uses a two VPC structure. The EC2 instances which make up your directory run outside of your AWS account, and are managed by AWS. They have two network adapters, `eth0` and `eth1`. `eth0` is the management adapter, and exists outside of your account. `eth1` is created within your account.

The management IP range of your directory's `eth0` network is chosen programmatically to ensure it does not conflict with the VPC where your directory is deployed. This IP range can be in either of the following pairs (as Directories run in two subnets):

- 10.0.1.0/24 & 10.0.2.0/24
- 192.168.1.0/24 & 192.168.2.0/24

We avoid conflicts by checking the first octet of the `ETH1` CIDR. If it starts with a 10, then we choose a 192.168.0.0/16 VPC with 192.168.1.0/24 and 192.168.2.0/24 subnets. If the first octet is anything else other than a 10 we choose a 10.0.0.0/16 VPC with 10.0.1.0/24 and 10.0.2.0/24 subnets.

The selection algorithm does not include routes on your VPC. It is therefore possible to have an IP routing conflict result from this scenario.

Multi-factor Authentication Prerequisites

To support multi-factor authentication with your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory, you must configure either your on-premises or cloud-based [Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service](#) (RADIUS) server in the following way so that it can accept requests from your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory in AWS.

1. On your RADIUS server, create two RADIUS clients to represent both of the AWS Managed Microsoft AD domain controllers (DCs) in AWS. You must configure both clients using the following common parameters (your RADIUS server may vary):
 - **Address (DNS or IP):** This is the DNS address for one of the AWS Managed Microsoft AD DCs. Both DNS addresses can be found in the AWS Directory Service Console on the **Details** page of the AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory in which you plan to use MFA. The DNS addresses displayed represent the IP addresses for both of the AWS Managed Microsoft AD DCs that are used by AWS.
Note
If your RADIUS server supports DNS addresses, you must create only one RADIUS client configuration. Otherwise, you must create one RADIUS client configuration for each AWS Managed Microsoft AD DC.
 - **Port number:** Configure the port number for which your RADIUS server accepts RADIUS client connections. The standard RADIUS port is 1812.
 - **Shared secret:** Type or generate a shared secret that the RADIUS server will use to connect with RADIUS clients.
 - **Protocol:** You might need to configure the authentication protocol between the AWS Managed Microsoft AD DCs and the RADIUS server. Supported protocols are PAP, CHAP MS-CHAPv1, and MS-CHAPv2. MS-CHAPv2 is recommended because it provides the strongest security of the three options.
 - **Application name:** This may be optional in some RADIUS servers and usually identifies the application in messages or reports.
2. Configure your existing network to allow inbound traffic from the RADIUS clients (AWS Managed Microsoft AD DCs DNS addresses, see Step 1) to your RADIUS server port.
3. Add a rule to the Amazon EC2 security group in your AWS Managed Microsoft AD domain that allows inbound traffic from the RADIUS server DNS address and port number defined previously. For more information, see [Adding Rules to a Security Group](#) in the *EC2 User Guide*.

For more information about using AWS Managed Microsoft AD with MFA, see [Enable Multi-Factor Authentication for AWS Managed Microsoft AD](#) (p. 24).

Create Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory

To create a new directory, perform the following steps. Before starting this procedure, make sure that you have completed the prerequisites identified in [AWS Managed Microsoft AD Prerequisites](#) (p. 9).

To create an AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, choose **Directories** and then choose **Set up directory**.
2. On the **Select directory type** page, choose **AWS Managed Microsoft AD**, and then choose **Next**.

3. On the **Enter directory information** page, provide the following information:

Edition

Choose from either the **Standard Edition** or **Enterprise Edition** of AWS Managed Microsoft AD. For more information about editions, see [AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory](#).

Directory DNS name

The fully qualified name for the directory, such as `corp.example.com`.

Directory NetBIOS name

The short name for the directory, such as `CORP`.

Directory description

An optional description for the directory.

Admin password

The password for the directory administrator. The directory creation process creates an administrator account with the user name `Admin` and this password.

The password cannot include the word "admin."

The directory administrator password is case-sensitive and must be between 8 and 64 characters in length, inclusive. It must also contain at least one character from three of the following four categories:

- Lowercase letters (a-z)
- Uppercase letters (A-Z)
- Numbers (0-9)
- Non-alphanumeric characters (~!@#\$%^&* _-+= `|{}[];:'"<>.,?/)

Confirm password

Retype the administrator password.

4. On the **Choose VPC and subnets** page, provide the following information, and then choose **Next**.

VPC

The VPC for the directory.

Subnets

Choose the subnets for the domain controllers. The two subnets must be in different Availability Zones.

5. On the **Review & create** page, review the directory information and make any necessary changes. When the information is correct, choose **Create directory**. Creating the directory takes 20 to 40 minutes. Once created, the **Status** value changes to **Active**.

What Gets Created

When you create a directory with AWS Managed Microsoft AD, AWS Directory Service performs the following tasks on your behalf:

- Automatically associates an elastic network interface with each of your domain controllers. Each of these network interfaces are essential to preserve connectivity between EC2 and AWS Directory Service and should never be deleted. You can identify all network interfaces reserved for use with AWS Directory Service by the description: "AWS created network interface for directory *directory-id*". For more information, see [Elastic Network Interfaces](#) in the Amazon EC2 User Guide.

- Sets up Active Directory within the VPC running on two domain controllers for fault tolerance and high availability. If you need more domain controllers, you can add them later. For more information, see [Deploy Additional Domain Controllers \(p. 103\)](#).
- Creates an AWS Security Group that establishes network filters for traffic in and out of your domain controllers. The default outbound filters permit all traffic to any destination. The default inbound filter allows only traffic through ports that are required by Active Directory from any source. Because you should never connect your VPC directly to the Internet, traffic to the domain controllers is limited to traffic from other computers in your VPC or from other VPCs or on-premises networks that you have connected using VPC peering, AWS Direct Connect, or a Virtual Private Network connection. Use extreme caution if you attempt to change these as you may break your ability to communicate with your domain controllers. For more information about port requirements, see [AWS Managed Microsoft AD Prerequisites \(p. 9\)](#).
- Creates a directory administrator account with the user name Admin and the specified password. This account is located under the Users OU (For example, Corp > Users). You use this account to manage your directory in the AWS Cloud. For more information, see [Admin Account \(p. 14\)](#).

Important

Be sure to save this password. AWS Directory Service does not store this password, and it cannot be retrieved. However, you can reset a password from the AWS Directory Service console or by using the [ResetUserPassword API](#).

- Creates the following three organizational units (OUs) under the domain root:

OU name	Description
AWS Delegated Groups	Stores all of the groups that you can use to delegate AWS specific permissions to your users.
AWS Reserved	Stores all AWS Management specific accounts.
<yourdomainname>	<p>The name of this OU is based off of the NetBIOS name you typed when you created your directory. If you did not specify a NetBIOS name, it will default to the first part of your Directory DNS name (for example, in the case of corp.example.com, the NetBIOS name would be corp). This OU is owned by AWS and contains all of your AWS-related directory objects, which you are granted Full Control over. Two child OUs exist under this OU by default; Computers and Users. For example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Corp<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Computers• Users

- Creates the following groups in the **AWS Delegated Groups** OU:

Group name	Description
AWS Delegated Account Operators	Members of this security group have limited account management capability such as password resets and unlocks
AWS Delegated Active Directory Based Activation Administrators	Members of this security group can create Active Directory volume licensing activation objects,

Group name	Description
	which enables enterprises to activate computers through a connection to their domain.
AWS Delegated Add Workstations To Domain Users	Members of this security group can join 10 computers to a domain
AWS Delegated Administrators	Members of this security group can manage AWS Managed Microsoft AD, have full control of all the objects in your OU and can manage groups contained in the AWS Delegated Groups OU
AWS Delegated Deleted Object Lifetime Administrators	Members of this security group can modify the msDS-DeletedObjectLifetime object, which defines how long a deleted object will be available to recover from the AD Recycle Bin.
AWS Delegated Distributed File System Administrators	Members of this security group can add and remove FRS, DFS-R, and DFS name spaces
AWS Delegated Domain Name System Administrators	Members of this security group can manage Active Directory integrated DNS
AWS Delegated Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol Administrators	Members of this security group can authorize Windows DHCP servers in the enterprise
AWS Delegated Enterprise Certificate Authority Administrators	Members of this security group can deploy and manage Microsoft Enterprise Certificate Authority infrastructure
AWS Delegated Fine Grained Password Policy Administrators	Members of this security group can modify precreated fine-grained password policies
AWS Delegated Group Policy Administrators	Members of this security group can perform group policy management tasks (create, edit, delete, link)
AWS Delegated Kerberos Delegation Administrators	Members of this security group can enable delegation on computer and user account objects
AWS Delegated Managed Service Account Administrators	Members of this security group can create and delete Managed Service Accounts
AWS Delegated Remote Access Service Administrators	Members of this security group can add and remove RAS servers from the RAS and IAS Servers group
AWS Delegated Replicate Directory Changes Administrators	Members of this security group can synchronize profile information in Active Directory with SharePoint Server
AWS Delegated Server Administrators	Members of this security group are included in the local administrators group on all domain joined computers
AWS Delegated Sites and Services Administrators	Members of this security group can rename the Default-First-Site-Name object in Active Directory sites and services

Group name	Description
AWS Delegated System Management Administrators	Members of this security group can create and manage objects in the System Management container.
AWS Delegated Terminal Server Licensing Administrators	Members of this security group can add and remove Terminal Server License Servers from the Terminal Server License Servers group
AWS Delegated User Principal Name Suffix Administrators	Members of this security group can add and remove user principal name suffixes

Admin Account

When you create an AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory directory, AWS creates an organizational unit (OU) to store all AWS related groups and accounts. For more information about this OU, see [What Gets Created \(p. 11\)](#). This includes the Admin account. The Admin account has permissions to perform the following common administrative activities for your OU:

- Add, update, or delete users, groups, and computers. For more information, see [Manage Users and Groups in AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 59\)](#).
- Add resources to your domain such as file or print servers, and then assign permissions for those resources to users and groups in your OU.
- Create additional OUs and containers.
- Delegate authority of additional OUs and containers. For more information, see [Delegate Directory Join Privileges for AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 57\)](#).
- Create and link group policies.
- Restore deleted objects from the Active Directory Recycle Bin.
- Run Active Directory and DNS Windows PowerShell modules on the Active Directory Web Service.
- Create and configure group Managed Service Accounts. For more information, see [Group Managed Service Accounts \(p. 17\)](#).
- Configure Kerberos constrained delegation. For more information, see [Kerberos Constrained Delegation \(p. 17\)](#).

The Admin account also has rights to perform the following domainwide activities:

- Manage DNS configurations (add, remove, or update records, zones, and forwarders)
- View DNS event logs
- View security event logs

Only the actions listed here are allowed for the Admin account. The Admin account also lacks permissions for any directory-related actions outside of your specific OU, such as on the parent OU.

Important

AWS Domain Administrators have full administrative access to all domains hosted on AWS. See your agreement with AWS and the [AWS Data Protection FAQ](#) for more information about how AWS handles content, including directory information, that you store on AWS systems.

Enterprise and Domain Administrator Privileged Accounts

To perform operational management of your directory, AWS has exclusive control of accounts with Enterprise Administrator and Domain Administrator privileges. This includes exclusive control of the AD

administrator account. AWS protects this account by automating password management through the use of a password vault. During automated rotation of the administrator password, AWS creates a temporary user account and grants it Domain Administrator privileges. This temporary account is used as a back-up in the event of password rotation failure on the administrator account. After AWS successfully rotates the administrator password, AWS deletes the temporary administrator account.

Normally AWS operates the directory entirely through automation. In the event that an automation process is unable to resolve an operational problem, AWS may need to have a support engineer sign in to your domain controller to perform diagnosis. In these rare cases, AWS implements a request/notification system to grant access. In this process, AWS automation creates a time-limited user account in your directory that has Domain Administrator permissions. AWS associates the user account with the engineer who is assigned to work on your directory. AWS records this association in our log system and provides the engineer with the credentials to use. All actions taken by the engineer are logged in the Windows event logs. When the allocated time elapses, automation deletes the user account.

You can monitor administrative account actions by using the log forwarding feature of your directory. This feature enables you to forward the AD Security events to your CloudWatch system where you can implement monitoring solutions. For more information, see [Enable Log Forwarding \(p. 36\)](#).

Key Concepts for AWS Managed Microsoft AD

You'll get more out of AWS Managed Microsoft AD if you become familiar with the following key concepts.

Topics

- [Active Directory Schema \(p. 15\)](#)
- [Patching and Maintenance for AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 16\)](#)
- [Group Managed Service Accounts \(p. 17\)](#)
- [Kerberos Constrained Delegation \(p. 17\)](#)

Active Directory Schema

A schema is the definition of attributes and classes that are part of a distributed directory and is similar to fields and tables in a database. Schemas include a set of rules which determine the type and format of data that can be added or included in the database. The User class is one example of a *class* that is stored in the database. Some example of User class attributes can include the user's first name, last name, phone number, and so on.

Schema Elements

Attributes, classes and objects are the basic elements that are used to build object definitions in the schema. The following provides details about schema elements that are important to know before you begin the process to extend your AWS Managed Microsoft AD schema.

Attributes

Each schema attribute, which is similar to a field in a database, has several properties that define the characteristics of the attribute. For example, the property used by LDAP clients to read and write the attribute is `LDAPDisplayName`. The `LDAPDisplayName` property must be unique across all attributes and classes. For a complete list of attribute characteristics, see [Characteristics of Attributes](#) on the MSDN website. For additional guidance on how to create a new attribute, see [Defining a New Attribute](#) on the MSDN website.

Classes

The classes are analogous to tables in a database and also have several properties to be defined. For example, the `objectClassCategory` defines the class category. For a complete list of class characteristics, see [Characteristics of Object Classes](#) on the MSDN website. For more information about how to create a new class, see [Defining a New Class](#) on the MSDN website.

Object identifier (OID)

Each class and attribute must have an OID that is unique for all of your objects. Software vendors must obtain their own OID to ensure uniqueness. Uniqueness avoids conflicts when the same attribute is used by more than one application for different purposes. To ensure uniqueness, you can obtain a root OID from an ISO Name Registration Authority. Alternatively, you can obtain a base OID from Microsoft. For more information about OIDs and how to obtain them, see [Object Identifiers](#) on the MSDN website.

Schema linked attributes

Some attributes are linked between two classes with forward and back links. The best example is groups. When you look at a group it shows you the members of the group; if you look at a user you can see what groups it belongs to. When you add a user to a group, Active Directory creates a forward link to the group. Then Active Directory adds a back link from the group to the user. A unique link ID must be generated when creating an attribute that will be linked. For more information, see [Linked Attributes](#) on the MSDN website.

Related Topics

- [When to Extend Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Schema \(p. 82\)](#)
- [Tutorial: Extending Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Schema \(p. 82\)](#)

Patching and Maintenance for AWS Managed Microsoft AD

AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory, also known as AWS DS for AWS Managed Microsoft AD, is actually Microsoft Active Directory Domain Services (AD DS), delivered as a managed service. The system uses Microsoft Windows Server 2012 R2 for the domain controllers (DCs), and AWS adds software to the DCs for service management purposes. AWS updates (patches) DCs to add new functionality and keep the Microsoft Windows Server software current. During the patching process, your directory remains available for use.

Ensuring Availability

By default each directory consists of two DCs, each installed in a different Availability Zone. At your option, you may add DCs to further increase availability. AWS patches your DCs sequentially, during which time the DC that AWS is actively patching is unavailable. In the event that one or more of your DCs is temporarily out of service, AWS defers patching until your directory has at least two operational DCs. This lets you use the other operating DCs during the patch process, which typically takes 30 to 45 minutes per DC, although this time may vary. To ensure your applications can reach an operating DC in the event that one or more DCs is unavailable for any reason, including patching, your applications should use the Windows DC locator service and not use static DC addresses.

Understanding the Patching Schedule

To keep the Microsoft Windows Server software current on your DCs, AWS utilizes Microsoft updates. As Microsoft makes monthly rollup patches available for Windows Server, AWS makes a best effort to test

and apply the rollup to all customer DCs within three calendar weeks. In addition, AWS reviews updates that Microsoft releases outside of the monthly rollup based on applicability to DCs and urgency. For security patches that Microsoft rates as *Critical* or *Important*, and that are relevant to DCs, AWS makes every effort to test and deploy the patch within five days.

Group Managed Service Accounts

With Windows Server 2012, Microsoft introduced a new method that administrators could use to manage service accounts called group Managed Service Accounts (gMSAs). Using gMSAs, service administrators no longer needed to manually manage password synchronization between service instances. Instead, an administrator could simply create a gMSA in Active Directory and then configure multiple service instances to use that single gMSA.

To grant permissions so users in AWS Managed Microsoft AD can create a gMSA, you must add their accounts as a member of the *AWS Delegated Managed Service Account Administrators* security group. By default, the Admin account is a member of this group. For more information about gMSAs, see [Group Managed Service Accounts Overview](#) on the Microsoft TechNet website.

Related AWS Security Blog post

- [How AWS Managed Microsoft AD Helps to Simplify the Deployment and Improve the Security of Active Directory–Integrated .NET Applications](#)

Kerberos Constrained Delegation

Kerberos constrained delegation is a feature in Windows Server. This feature gives service administrators the ability to specify and enforce application trust boundaries by limiting the scope where application services can act on a user's behalf. This can be useful when you need to configure which front-end service accounts can delegate to their backend services. Kerberos constrained delegation also prevents your gMSA from connecting to any and all services on behalf of your Active Directory users, avoiding the potential for abuse by a rogue developer.

For example, let's say user jsmith logs into an HR application. You want the SQL Server to apply jsmith's database permissions. However, by default SQL Server opens the database connection using the service account credentials that apply hr-app-service's permissions instead of jsmith's configured permissions. You must make it possible for the HR payroll application to access the SQL Server database using the jsmith's credentials. To do that, you enable Kerberos constrained delegation for the hr-app-service service account on your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory in AWS. When jsmith logs on, Active Directory provides a Kerberos ticket that Windows automatically uses when jsmith attempts to access other services in the network. Kerberos delegation enables the hr-app-service account to reuse the jsmith Kerberos ticket when accessing the database, thus applying permissions specific to jsmith when opening the database connection.

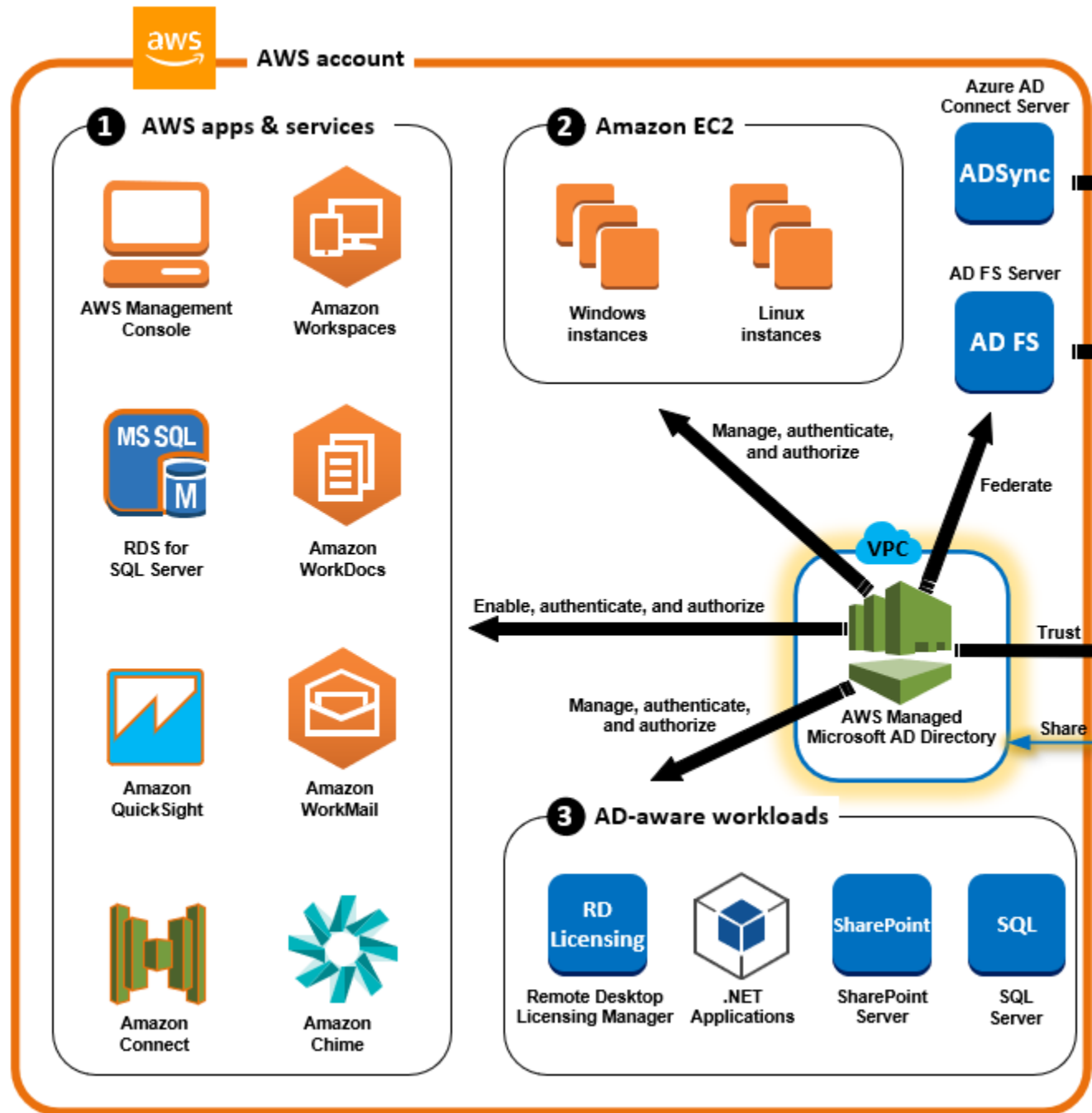
To grant permissions that allow users in AWS Managed Microsoft AD to configure Kerberos constrained delegation, you must add their accounts as a member of the *AWS Delegated Kerberos Delegation Administrators* security group. By default, the Admin account is a member of this group. For more information about Kerberos constrained delegation, see [Kerberos Constrained Delegation Overview](#) on the Microsoft TechNet website.

Use Cases for AWS Managed Microsoft AD

With AWS Managed Microsoft AD, you can share a single directory for multiple use cases. For example, you can share a directory to authenticate and authorize access for .NET applications, [Amazon RDS](#)

for [SQL Server](#) with [Windows Authentication](#) enabled, and [Amazon Chime](#) for messaging and video conferencing.

The following diagram shows some of the use cases for your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory. These include the ability to grant your users access to external cloud applications and allow your on-premises AD users to manage and have access to resources in the AWS Cloud.



Use AWS Managed Microsoft AD for either of the following business use cases.

Topics

- [Use Case 1: Sign In to AWS Applications and Services with AD Credentials \(p. 19\)](#)

- [Use Case 2: Manage Amazon EC2 Instances \(p. 19\)](#)
- [Use Case 3: Provide Directory Services to Your AD-Aware Workloads \(p. 19\)](#)
- [Use Case 4: SSO to Office 365 and Other Cloud Applications \(p. 19\)](#)
- [Use Case 5: Extend Your On-Premises AD to the AWS Cloud \(p. 20\)](#)
- [Use Case 6: Share Your Directory to Seamlessly Join Amazon EC2 Instances to a Domain Across AWS Accounts \(p. 20\)](#)

Use Case 1: Sign In to AWS Applications and Services with AD Credentials

You can enable multiple AWS applications and services such as the [AWS Management Console](#), [Amazon WorkSpaces](#), and [Amazon RDS for SQL Server](#) to use your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory. When you enable an AWS application or service in your directory, your users can access the application or service with their AD credentials.

For example, you can enable your users to [sign in to the AWS Management Console with their AD credentials](#). To do this, you enable the AWS Management Console as an application in your directory, and then assign your AD users and groups to IAM roles. When your users sign in to the AWS Management Console, they assume an IAM role to manage AWS resources. This makes it easy for you to grant your users access to the AWS Management Console without needing to configure and manage a separate SAML infrastructure.

Use Case 2: Manage Amazon EC2 Instances

Using familiar AD administration tools, you can apply AD group policy objects (GPOs) to centrally manage your Amazon EC2 for Windows or Linux instances by [joining your instances to your AWS Managed Microsoft AD domain](#).

In addition, your users can sign in to your instances with their AD credentials. This eliminates the need to use individual instance credentials or distribute private key (PEM) files. This makes it easier for you to instantly grant or revoke access to users by using AD user administration tools you already use.

Use Case 3: Provide Directory Services to Your AD-Aware Workloads

AWS Managed Microsoft AD is an actual Microsoft AD that enables you to run traditional AD-aware workloads such as [Remote Desktop Licensing Manager](#) and [Microsoft SharePoint and Microsoft SQL Server Always On](#) in the AWS Cloud. AWS Managed Microsoft AD also helps you to simplify and improve the security of AD-integrated .NET applications by using [group Managed Service Accounts \(gMSAs\)](#) and [Kerberos constrained delegation \(KCD\)](#).

Use Case 4: SSO to Office 365 and Other Cloud Applications

You can use AWS Managed Microsoft AD to provide SSO for cloud applications. You can use Azure AD Connect to synchronize your users into Azure AD, and then use Active Directory Federation Services (AD FS) so that your users can access Microsoft Office 365 and other SAML 2.0 cloud applications by using their AD credentials.

Use Case 5: Extend Your On-Premises AD to the AWS Cloud

If you already have an AD infrastructure and want to use it when migrating AD-aware workloads to the AWS Cloud, AWS Managed Microsoft AD can help. You can use AD trusts to connect AWS Managed Microsoft AD to your existing AD. This means your users can access AD-aware and AWS applications with their on-premises AD credentials, without needing you to synchronize users, groups, or passwords.

For example, your users can sign in to the AWS Management Console and Amazon WorkSpaces by using their existing AD user names and passwords. Also, when you use AD-aware applications such as SharePoint with AWS Managed Microsoft AD, your logged-in Windows users can access these applications without needing to enter credentials again.

Use Case 6: Share Your Directory to Seamlessly Join Amazon EC2 Instances to a Domain Across AWS Accounts

Sharing your directory across multiple AWS accounts enables you to manage AWS services such as [Amazon EC2](#) easily without the need to operate a directory for each account and each VPC. You can use your directory from any AWS account and from any [Amazon VPC](#) within an AWS Region. This capability makes it easier and more cost effective to manage directory-aware workloads with a single directory across accounts and VPCs. For example, you can now manage your [Windows workloads](#) deployed in EC2 instances across multiple accounts and VPCs easily by using a single AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory.

When you share your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory with another AWS account, you can use the Amazon EC2 console or [AWS Systems Manager](#) to seamlessly join your instances from any Amazon VPC within the account and AWS Region. You can quickly deploy your directory-aware workloads on EC2 instances by eliminating the need to manually join your instances to a domain or to deploy directories in each account and VPC. For more information, see [Share Your Directory \(p. 38\)](#).

How To Administer AWS Managed Microsoft AD

This section lists all of the procedures for operating and maintaining an AWS Managed Microsoft AD environment.

Topics

- [Secure Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Directory \(p. 21\)](#)
- [Monitor Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 32\)](#)
- [Share Your Directory \(p. 38\)](#)
- [Join an EC2 Instance to Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Directory \(p. 46\)](#)
- [Manage Users and Groups in AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 59\)](#)
- [Connect to Your Existing AD Infrastructure \(p. 64\)](#)
- [Extend Your Schema \(p. 82\)](#)
- [Maintain Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Directory \(p. 86\)](#)
- [Grant Users and Groups Access to AWS Resources \(p. 90\)](#)
- [Enable Access to AWS Applications and Services \(p. 94\)](#)
- [Enable Access to the AWS Management Console with AD Credentials \(p. 102\)](#)

- [Deploy Additional Domain Controllers \(p. 103\)](#)
- [Migrate Users from Active Directory to AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 105\)](#)

Secure Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Directory

This section describes considerations for securing your AWS Managed Microsoft AD environment.

Topics

- [Manage Password Policies for AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 21\)](#)
- [Enable Multi-Factor Authentication for AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 24\)](#)
- [Enable Secure LDAP \(LDAPS\) \(p. 26\)](#)
- [Manage Compliance for AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 31\)](#)

Manage Password Policies for AWS Managed Microsoft AD

AWS Managed Microsoft AD enables you to define and assign different fine-grained password and account lockout policies (also referred to as fine-grained password policies) for groups of users you manage in your AWS Managed Microsoft AD domain. When you create an AWS Microsoft AD directory, a default domain policy is created and applied to the directory. This policy includes the following settings:

Policy	Setting
Enforce password history	24 passwords remembered
Maximum password age	42 days *
Minimum password age	1 day
Minimum password length	7 characters
Password must meet complexity requirements	Enabled
Store passwords using reversible encryption	Disabled

* Note: The 42 day maximum password age includes the admin password.

For example, you can assign a less strict policy setting for employees that have access to low sensitivity information only. For senior managers who regularly access confidential information you can apply more strict settings.

AWS provides a set of fine-grained password policies in AWS Managed Microsoft AD that you can configure and assign to your groups. To configure the policies, you can use standard Microsoft policy tools such as [Active Directory Administrative Center \(ADAC\)](#). To get started with the Microsoft policy tools, see [Installing the Active Directory Administration Tools \(p. 60\)](#).

Topics

- [Supported Policy Settings \(p. 22\)](#)
- [Delegate Who Can Manage Your Password Policies \(p. 23\)](#)
- [Assign Password Policies to Your Users \(p. 23\)](#)

Related AWS Security Blog Article

- [How to Configure Even Stronger Password Policies to Help Meet Your Security Standards by Using AWS Directory Service for AWS Managed Microsoft AD](#)

Supported Policy Settings

AWS Managed Microsoft AD includes five fine-grained policies with a non-editable precedence value. The policies have a number of properties you can configure to enforce the strength of passwords, and account lock-out actions in the event of login failures. You can assign the policies to zero or more Active Directory groups. If an end-user is a member of multiple groups and receives more than one password policy, Active Directory enforces the policy with the lowest precedence value.

AWS Pre-Defined Password Policies

The following table lists the five policies included in your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory and their assigned precedence value. For more information, see [Precedence \(p. 23\)](#).

Policy name	Precedence
CustomerPSO-01	10
CustomerPSO-02	20
CustomerPSO-03	30
CustomerPSO-04	40
CustomerPSO-05	50

Password Policy Properties

You may edit the following properties in your password policies to conform to the compliance standards that meet your business needs.

- Policy name
- [Enforce password history](#)
- [Minimum password length](#)
- [Minimum password age](#)
- [Maximum password age](#)
- [Store passwords using reversible encryption](#)
- [Password must meet complexity requirements](#)

You cannot modify the precedence values for these policies. For more details about how these settings affect password enforcement, see [AD DS: Fine-Grained Password Policies](#) on the *Microsoft TechNet* website. For general information about these policies, see [Password Policy](#) on the *Microsoft TechNet* website.

Account Lockout Policies

You may also modify the following properties of your password policies to specify if and how Active Directory should lockout an account after login failures:

- Number of failed logon attempts allowed
- Account lockout duration

- Reset failed logon attempts after some duration

For general information about these policies, see [Account Lockout Policy](#) on the *Microsoft TechNet* website.

Precedence

Policies with a lower precedence value have higher priority. You assign password policies to Active Directory security groups. While you should apply a single policy to a security group, a single user may receive more than one password policy. For example, suppose `jsmith` is a member of the HR group and also a member of the MANAGERS group. If you assign **CustomerPSO-05** (which has a precedence of 50) to the HR group, and **CustomerPSO-04** (which has a precedence of 40) to MANAGERS, **CustomerPSO-04** has the higher priority and Active Directory applies that policy to `jsmith`.

If you assign multiple policies to a user or group, Active Directory determines the resultant policy as follows:

1. A policy you assign directly to the user object applies.
2. If no policy is assigned directly to the user object, the policy with the lowest precedence value of all policies received by the user as a result of group membership applies.

For additional details, see [AD DS: Fine-Grained Password Policies](#) on the *Microsoft TechNet* website.

Delegate Who Can Manage Your Password Policies

You can delegate permissions to manage password policies to specific user accounts you created in your AWS Managed Microsoft AD by adding the accounts to the **AWS Delegated Fine Grained Password Policy Administrators** security group. When an account becomes a member of this group, the account has permissions to edit and configure any of the password policies listed [previously \(p. 22\)](#).

To delegate who can manage password policies

1. Launch [Active Directory Administrative Center \(ADAC\)](#) from any managed EC2 instance that you joined to your AWS Managed Microsoft AD domain.
2. Switch to the **Tree View** and navigate to the **AWS Delegated Groups** OU. For more information about this OU, see [What Gets Created \(p. 11\)](#).
3. Find the **AWS Delegated Fine Grained Password Policy Administrators** user group. Add any users or groups from your domain to this group.

Assign Password Policies to Your Users

User accounts that are a member of the **AWS Delegated Fine Grained Password Policy Administrators** security group can use the following procedure to assign policies to users and security groups.

To assign password policies to your users

1. Launch [Active Directory Administrative Center \(ADAC\)](#) from any managed EC2 instance that you joined to your AWS Managed Microsoft AD domain.
2. Switch to the **Tree View** and navigate to **System\Password Settings Container**.
3. Double click on the fine-grained policy you want to edit. Click **Add** to edit the policy properties, and add users or security groups to the policy. For more information about the default fine-grained policies provided with AWS Managed Microsoft AD, see [AWS Pre-Defined Password Policies \(p. 22\)](#).

If you do not configure any of the five password policies in your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory, Active Directory uses the default domain group policy. For additional details on using **Password Settings Container**, see this [Microsoft blog post](#).

Enable Multi-Factor Authentication for AWS Managed Microsoft AD

You can enable multi-factor authentication (MFA) for your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory to increase security when your users specify their AD credentials to access [Supported Amazon Enterprise Applications \(p. 25\)](#). When you enable MFA, your users enter their username and password (first factor) as usual, and they must also enter an authentication code (the second factor) they obtain from your virtual or hardware MFA solution. These factors together provide additional security by preventing access to your Amazon Enterprise applications, unless users supply valid user credentials and a valid MFA code.

To enable MFA, you must have an MFA solution that is a [Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service \(RADIUS\)](#) server, or you must have an MFA plugin to a RADIUS server already implemented in your on-premises infrastructure. Your MFA solution should implement One Time Passcodes (OTP) that users obtain from a hardware device or from software running on a device such as a cell phone.

RADIUS is an industry-standard client/server protocol that provides authentication, authorization, and accounting management to enable users to connect to network services. AWS Managed Microsoft AD includes a RADIUS client that connects to the RADIUS server upon which you have implemented your MFA solution. Your RADIUS server validates the username and OTP code. If your RADIUS server successfully validates the user, AWS Managed Microsoft AD then authenticates the user against AD. Upon successful AD authentication, users can then access the AWS application. Communication between the AWS Managed Microsoft AD RADIUS client and your RADIUS server require you to configure AWS security groups that enable communication over port 1812.

You can enable multi-factor authentication for your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory by performing the following procedure. For more information about how to configure your RADIUS server to work with AWS Directory Service and MFA, see [Multi-factor Authentication Prerequisites \(p. 10\)](#).

Note

Multi-factor authentication is not available for Simple AD. However, MFA can be enabled for your AD Connector directory. For more information, see [Enable Multi-Factor Authentication for AD Connector \(p. 143\)](#).

To enable multi-factor authentication for AWS Managed Microsoft AD

1. Identify the IP address of your RADIUS MFA server and your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory.
2. Edit your Virtual Private Cloud (VPC) security groups to enable communications over port 1812 between your AWS Managed Microsoft AD IP end points and your RADIUS MFA server.
3. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, select **Directories**.
4. Choose the directory ID link for your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory.
5. On the **Directory details** page, in the **Multi-factor authentication** section, choose **Actions**, and then choose **Enable**.
6. On the **Enable multi-factor authentication (MFA)** page, provide the following values:

Display label

Provide a label name.

RADIUS server DNS name or IP addresses

The IP addresses of your RADIUS server endpoints, or the IP address of your RADIUS server load balancer. You can enter multiple IP addresses by separating them with a comma (e.g., 192.0.0.0, 192.0.0.12).

Note

RADIUS MFA is applicable only to authenticate access to the AWS Management Console, or to Amazon Enterprise applications and services such as Amazon WorkSpaces, Amazon QuickSight, or Amazon Chime. It does not provide MFA to Windows workloads running on EC2 instances, or for signing into an EC2 instance. AWS Directory Service does not support RADIUS Challenge/Response authentication. Users must have their MFA code at the time they enter their username and password. Alternatively, you must use a solution that performs MFA out-of-band such as SMS text verification for the user. In out-of-band MFA solutions, you must make sure you set the RADIUS time-out value appropriately for your solution. When using an out-of-band MFA solution, the sign-in page will prompt the user for an MFA code. In this case, the best practice is for users to enter their password in both the password field and the MFA field.

Port

The port that your RADIUS server is using for communications. Your on-premises network must allow inbound traffic over the default RADIUS server port (UDP:1812) from the AWS Directory Service servers.

Shared secret code

The shared secret code that was specified when your RADIUS endpoints were created.

Confirm shared secret code

Confirm the shared secret code for your RADIUS endpoints.

Protocol

Select the protocol that was specified when your RADIUS endpoints were created.

Server timeout (in seconds)

The amount of time, in seconds, to wait for the RADIUS server to respond. This must be a value between 1 and 50.

Max RADIUS request retries

The number of times that communication with the RADIUS server is attempted. This must be a value between 0 and 10.

Multi-factor authentication is available when the **RADIUS Status** changes to **Enabled**.

7. Choose **Enable**.

Supported Amazon Enterprise Applications

All Amazon Enterprise IT applications including Amazon WorkSpaces, Amazon WorkDocs, Amazon WorkMail, Amazon QuickSight, and access to AWS Single Sign-On and AWS Management Console are supported when using AWS Managed Microsoft AD and AD Connector with MFA.

For information about how to configure basic user access to Amazon Enterprise applications, AWS Single Sign-On and the AWS Management Console using AWS Directory Service, see [Enable Access to AWS Applications and Services \(p. 94\)](#) and [Enable Access to the AWS Management Console with AD Credentials \(p. 102\)](#).

Related AWS Security Blog Article

- [How to Enable Multi-Factor Authentication for AWS Services by Using AWS Managed Microsoft AD and On-Premises Credentials](#)

Enable Secure LDAP (LDAPS)

Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) is a standard communications protocol used to read and write data to and from Active Directory. Some applications use LDAP to add, remove, or search users and groups in Active Directory or to transport credentials for authenticating users in Active Directory. Every LDAP communication includes a client (such as an application) and a server (such as Active Directory).

By default, communications over LDAP are not encrypted. This makes it possible for a malicious user to use network monitoring software to view data packets over the wire. This is why many corporate security policies typically require that organizations encrypt all LDAP communication.

To mitigate this form of data exposure, AWS Managed Microsoft AD provides an option: You can enable LDAP over Secure Sockets Layer (SSL)/Transport Layer Security (TLS), also known as LDAPS. With LDAPS, you can improve security across the wire. You can also meet compliance requirements by encrypting all communications between your LDAP-enabled applications and AWS Managed Microsoft AD.

AWS Managed Microsoft AD provides support for LDAPS in both of the following deployment scenarios:

- **Server-side LDAPS** encrypts LDAP communications between your commercial or homegrown LDAP-aware applications (acting as LDAP clients) and AWS Managed Microsoft AD (acting as an LDAP server). For more information, see [Enable Server-Side LDAPS Using AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 26\)](#).
- **Client-side LDAPS** encrypts LDAP communications between AWS applications such as Amazon WorkSpaces (acting as LDAP clients) and your self-managed Active Directory (acting as LDAP server). For more information, see [Enable Client-Side LDAPS Using AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 28\)](#).

Topics

- [Enable Server-Side LDAPS Using AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 26\)](#)
- [Enable Client-Side LDAPS Using AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 28\)](#)

Enable Server-Side LDAPS Using AWS Managed Microsoft AD

Server-side LDAPS support encrypts LDAP communications between your commercial or homegrown LDAP-aware applications and your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory. This helps to improve security across the wire and meet compliance requirements using the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) cryptographic protocol.

Enable Server-Side LDAPS

You must do most of the setup from the Amazon EC2 instance that you use to manage your AWS Managed Microsoft AD domain controllers. The following steps guide you through enabling LDAPS for your domain in the AWS Cloud.

Topics

- [Step 1: Delegate Who Can Enable LDAPS \(p. 26\)](#)
- [Step 2: Set Up Your Certificate Authority \(p. 27\)](#)
- [Step 3: Create a Certificate Template \(p. 27\)](#)
- [Step 4: Add Security Group Rules \(p. 28\)](#)

Step 1: Delegate Who Can Enable LDAPS

To enable server-side LDAPS, you must be a member of the Admins or AWS Delegated Enterprise Certificate Authority Administrators group in your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory. Alternatively, you can be the default administrative user (Admin account). If you prefer, you can have a user other than

the Admin account setup LDAPS. In that case, add that user to the Admins or AWS Delegated Enterprise Certificate Authority Administrators group in your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory.

Step 2: Set Up Your Certificate Authority

Before you can enable server-side LDAPS, you must create a certificate. This certificate must be issued by a Microsoft enterprise certificate authority (CA) server that is joined to your AWS Managed Microsoft AD domain. Once created, the certificate must be installed on each of your domain controllers in that domain. This certificate lets the LDAP service on the domain controllers listen for and automatically accept SSL connections from LDAP clients.

Note

Server-side LDAPS with AWS Managed Microsoft AD does not support certificates that are issued by a standalone CA. It also does not support certificates issued by a third-party certification authority.

Depending on your business need, you have the following options for setting up or connecting to a CA in your domain:

- **Create a subordinate Microsoft enterprise CA** – (Recommended) With this option, you can deploy a subordinate Microsoft enterprise CA server in the AWS Cloud. The server can use Amazon EC2 so that it works with your existing root Microsoft CA. For more information about how to set up a subordinate Microsoft enterprise CA, see [Install a Subordinate Certification Authority](#) on the Microsoft TechNet website.
- **Create a root Microsoft enterprise CA** – With this option, you can create a root Microsoft enterprise CA in the AWS Cloud using Amazon EC2 and join it to your AWS Managed Microsoft AD domain. This root CA can issue the certificate to your domain controllers. For more information about setting up a new root CA, see [Install a Root Certification Authority](#) on the Microsoft TechNet website.

For more information about how to join your EC2 instance to the domain, see [Join an EC2 Instance to Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Directory](#) (p. 46).

Step 3: Create a Certificate Template

After your enterprise CA has been set up, you can create a custom LDAPS certificate template in Active Directory. The certificate template must be created with server authentication and autoenroll enabled. For more information, see [Create a New Certificate Template](#) on the Microsoft TechNet website.

To create a certificate template

1. Log in to your CA with Admin credentials
2. Launch **Server Manager**, and then choose **Tools, Certification Authority**.
3. In the **Certificate Authority** window, expand your CA tree in the left pane. Right-click **Certificate Templates** and then choose **Manage**.
4. In the **Certificate Templates Console** window, right-click **Domain Controller**, and then choose **Duplicate Template**.
5. In the **Properties of New Template** window, switch to the **General** tab and change the **Template display name** to **ServerAuthentication**.
6. Switch to the **Security** tab and choose **Domain Controllers** in the **Group or user names** section. Select the **Autoenroll** check box in the **Permissions for Domain Controllers** section.
7. Switch to the **Extensions** tab, choose **Application Policies** in the **Extensions included in this template** section, and then choose **Edit**.
8. In the **Edit Application Policies Extension** window, choose **Client Authentication** and choose **Remove**. Click **OK** to create the **ServerAuthentication** certificate template, and then close the **Certificate Templates Console** window.

9. In the **Certificate Authority** window, right-click **Certificate Templates**, and choose **New, Certificate Template to Issue**.
10. In the **Enable Certificate Templates** window, choose **ServerAuthentication**, and then click **OK**.

Step 4: Add Security Group Rules

In the final step, you must open the Amazon EC2 console and add security group rules. These rules allow your domain controllers to connect to your enterprise CA to request a certificate. To do this, you add inbound rules so that your enterprise CA can accept incoming traffic from your domain controllers. Then you add outbound rules to allow traffic from your domain controllers to the enterprise CA.

Once both rules have been configured, your domain controllers request a certificate from your enterprise CA automatically and enable LDAPS for your directory. The LDAP service on your domain controllers is now ready to accept LDAPS connections.

To configure security group rules

1. Navigate to your Amazon EC2 console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/ec2> and sign in with administrator credentials.
2. In the left pane, choose **Security Groups** under **Network & Security**.
3. In the main pane, choose the AWS security group for your CA.
4. Choose the **Inbound** tab, and then choose **Edit**.
5. In the **Edit inbound rules** dialog box, do the following:
 - Choose **Add Rule**.
 - Choose **All traffic** for **Type** and **Custom** for **Source**.
 - Enter your directory's AWS security group (for example, sg-123456789) in the box next to **Source**.
 - Choose **Save**.
6. Now choose the AWS security group of your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory. Choose the **Outbound** tab and then choose **Edit**.
7. In the **Edit outbound rules** dialog box, do the following:
 - Choose **Add Rule**.
 - Choose **All traffic** for **Type** and **Custom** for **Destination**.
 - Type your CA's AWS security group in the box next to **Destination**.
 - Choose **Save**.

You can test the LDAPS connection to the AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory using the LDP tool. The LDP tool comes with the Active Directory Administrative Tools. For more information, see [Installing the Active Directory Administration Tools \(p. 60\)](#).

Note

Before you test the LDAPS connection, you must wait up to 180 minutes for the subordinate CA to issue a certificate to your domain controllers.

For additional details about server-side LDAPS and to see an example use case on how to set it up, see [How to Enable Server-Side LDAPS for Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Directory](#) on the AWS Security Blog.

Enable Client-Side LDAPS Using AWS Managed Microsoft AD

Client-side LDAPS support in AWS Managed Microsoft AD encrypts communications between your self-managed (either on-premises or cloud-based) Microsoft Active Directory (AD) and AWS applications.

Examples of such applications include Amazon WorkSpaces, AWS SSO, Amazon QuickSight, and Amazon Chime. This encryption helps you to better protect your organization's identity data and meet your security requirements.

Prerequisites

Before you enable client-side LDAPS, you need to meet the following requirements.

Topics

- [Deploy Server Certificates in Self-managed Active Directory \(p. 29\)](#)
- [CA Certificate Requirements \(p. 29\)](#)
- [Networking requirements \(p. 29\)](#)

Deploy Server Certificates in Self-managed Active Directory

In order to enable client-side LDAPS, you need to obtain and install server certificates for each domain controller in your self-managed Active Directory. These certificates will be used by the LDAP service to listen for and automatically accept SSL connections from LDAP clients. You can use SSL certificates that are either issued by an in-house Active Directory Certificate Services (ADCS) deployment or purchased from a commercial issuer. For more information on Active Directory server certificate requirements, see [LDAP over SSL \(LDAPS\) Certificate](#) on the Microsoft website.

CA Certificate Requirements

A certificate authority (CA) certificate, which represents the issuer of your server certificates, is required for client-side LDAPS operation. CA certificates are matched with the server certificates that are presented by your self-managed Active Directory domain controllers to encrypt LDAP communications. Note the following CA certificate requirements:

- To register a certificate, it must be more than 90 days away from expiration.
- Certificates must be in Privacy-Enhanced Mail (PEM) format. If exporting CA certificates from inside Active Directory, choose base64 encoded X.509 (.CER) as the export file format.
- A maximum of five (5) CA certificates can be stored per AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory.
- Certificates using the RSASSA-PSS signature algorithm are not supported.
- CA certificates that chain to every server certificate in every trusted domain must be registered.

Networking requirements

AWS application LDAP traffic will run exclusively on TCP port 636, with no fallback to LDAP port 389. However, Windows LDAP communications supporting replication, trusts, and more will continue using LDAP port 389 with Windows-native security. Configure AWS security groups and network firewalls to allow TCP communications on port 636 in AWS Managed Microsoft AD (outbound) and self-managed Active Directory (inbound). Leave open LDAP port 389 between AWS Managed Microsoft AD and self-managed Active Directory.

Enable Client-Side LDAPS

To enable client-side LDAPS, you import your certificate authority (CA) certificate into AWS Managed Microsoft AD, and then enable LDAPS on your directory. Upon enabling, all LDAP traffic between AWS applications and your self-managed Active Directory will flow with Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) channel encryption.

Note

You must use the AWS Command Line Interface to perform these steps. For more information, see [AWS Command Line Interface](#).

Topics

- [Step 1: Register Certificate in AWS Directory Service \(AWS CLI\) \(p. 30\)](#)
- [Step 2: Check Registration Status \(p. 30\)](#)
- [Step 3: Enable Client-Side LDAPS \(p. 30\)](#)
- [Step 4: Check LDAPS Status \(p. 30\)](#)

Step 1: Register Certificate in AWS Directory Service (AWS CLI)

To register a certificate, run the following command. For the certificate data, point to the location of your CA certificate file. A certificate ID will be provided in the response.

```
aws ds register-certificate --directory-id your_directory_id --certificate-data  
file://your_file_path
```

Step 2: Check Registration Status

Certificate registration takes time. To see the status of a certificate registration or a list of registered certificates, run the following command. Proceed to the next step once the `State` field reads "Registered".

```
aws ds list-certificates --directory-id your_directory_id
```

Step 3: Enable Client-Side LDAPS

To enable client-side LDAPS for your directory, run the following command.

```
aws ds enable-ldaps --directory-id your_directory_id --type Client
```

Step 4: Check LDAPS Status

To see the status of your directory LDAPS settings, including whether LDAPS is enabled, run the following command. When the `State` field reads "Enabled" then client-side LDAPS is active.

```
aws ds describe-ldaps-settings --directory-id your_directory_id --type Client
```

Manage Client-Side LDAPS

Use these commands to manage your LDAPS configuration.

Describe a Certificate

To see certificate details including when a certificate was registered or when it will expire, run the following command. For the certificate ID, use the identifier returned by `register-certificate` or `list-certificates`.

```
aws ds describe-certificate --directory-id your_directory_id --certificate-id your_cert_id
```

Deregister a Certificate

To remove a certificate from AWS Managed Microsoft AD, run the following command. For the certificate ID, use the identifier returned by `register-certificate` or `list-certificates`.

```
aws ds deregister-certificate --directory-id your_directory_id --certificate-id your_cert_id
```

Disable Client-Side LDAPS

To disable-client-side LDAPS for your directory, run the following command.



```
aws ds disable-ldaps --directory-id your_directory_id --type Client
```

Manage Compliance for AWS Managed Microsoft AD

You can use AWS Managed Microsoft AD to support your Active Directory-aware applications, in the AWS Cloud, that are subject to the following compliance requirements. However, your applications will not adhere to compliance requirements if you use Simple AD or AD Connector.

Supported Compliance Standards

AWS Managed Microsoft AD has undergone auditing for the following standards and is eligible for use as part of solutions for which you need to obtain compliance certification.

	<p>AWS Managed Microsoft AD meets Federal Risk and Authorization Management Program (FedRAMP) security requirements and has received a FedRAMP Joint Authorization Board (JAB) Provisional Authority to Operate (P-ATO) at the FedRAMP Moderate Baseline. For more information about FedRAMP, see FedRAMP Compliance.</p>
	<p>AWS Managed Microsoft AD has an Attestation of Compliance for Payment Card Industry (PCI) Data Security Standard (DSS) version 3.2 at Service Provider Level 1. Customers who use AWS products and services to store, process, or transmit cardholder data can use AWS Managed Microsoft AD as they manage their own PCI DSS compliance certification.</p> <p>For more information about PCI DSS, including how to request a copy of the AWS PCI Compliance Package, see PCI DSS Level 1. Importantly, you must configure fine-grained password policies in AWS Managed Microsoft AD to be consistent with PCI DSS version 3.2 standards. For details on which policies must be enforced, see the section below titled Enable PCI Compliance for Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Directory.</p>



AWS has expanded its Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA) compliance program to include AWS Managed Microsoft AD as a [HIPAA Eligible Service](#). If you have an executed Business Associate Agreement (BAA) with AWS, you can use AWS Managed Microsoft AD to help build your HIPAA-compliant applications.

AWS offers a [HIPAA-focused Whitepaper](#) for customers who are interested in learning more about how they can leverage AWS for the processing and storage of health information. For more information, see [HIPAA Compliance](#).

Shared Responsibility

Security, including FedRAMP, HIPAA and PCI compliance, is a [shared responsibility](#). It is important to understand that AWS Managed Microsoft AD compliance status does not automatically apply to applications that you run in the AWS Cloud. You need to ensure that your use of AWS services complies with the standards.

For a complete list of all the various AWS compliance programs that AWS Managed Microsoft AD supports, see [AWS Services in Scope by Compliance Program](#).

Enable PCI Compliance for Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Directory

To enable PCI compliance for your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory, you must configure fine-grained password policies as specified in the PCI DSS Attestation of Compliance (AOC) and Responsibility Summary document provided by AWS Artifact.

For more information about using fine-grained password policies, see [Manage Password Policies for AWS Managed Microsoft AD](#) (p. 21).

Monitor Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD

You can monitor your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory with the following methods:

Topics

- [Understanding Your Directory Status](#) (p. 32)
- [Configure Directory Status Notifications](#) (p. 33)
- [Review Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Directory Logs](#) (p. 35)
- [Enable Log Forwarding](#) (p. 36)

Understanding Your Directory Status

The following are the various statuses for a directory.

Active

The directory is operating normally. No issues have been detected by the AWS Directory Service for your directory.

Creating

The directory is currently being created. Directory creation typically takes between 5 to 30 minutes but may vary depending on the system load.

Deleted

The directory has been deleted. All resources for the directory have been released. Once a directory enters this state, it cannot be recovered.

Deleting

The directory is currently being deleted. The directory will remain in this state until it has been completely deleted. Once a directory enters this state, the delete operation cannot be cancelled, and the directory cannot be recovered.

Failed

The directory could not be created. Please delete this directory. If this problem persists, please contact the [AWS Support Center](#).

Impaired

The directory is running in a degraded state. One or more issues have been detected, and not all directory operations may be working at full operational capacity. There are many potential reasons for the directory being in this state. These include normal operational maintenance activity such as patching or EC2 instance rotation, temporary hot spotting by an application on one of your domain controllers, or changes you made to your network that inadvertently disrupt directory communications. For more information, see either [Troubleshooting AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 126\)](#), [Troubleshooting AD Connector \(p. 153\)](#), [Troubleshooting Simple AD \(p. 200\)](#). For normal maintenance related issues, AWS resolves these issues within 40 minutes. If after reviewing the troubleshooting topic, your directory is in an Impaired state longer than 40 minutes, we recommend that you contact the [AWS Support Center](#).

Important

Do not restore a snapshot while a directory is in an Impaired state. It is rare that snapshot restore is necessary to resolve impairments. For more information, see [Snapshot or Restore Your Directory \(p. 88\)](#).

Inoperable

The directory is not functional. All directory endpoints have reported issues.

Requested

A request to create your directory is currently pending.

RestoreFailed

Restoring the directory from a snapshot failed. Please retry the restore operation. If this continues, try a different snapshot, or contact the [AWS Support Center](#).

Restoring

The directory is currently being restored from an automatic or manual snapshot. Restoring from a snapshot typically takes several minutes, depending on the size of the directory data in the snapshot.

For more information, see [Simple AD Directory Status Reasons \(p. 201\)](#).

Configure Directory Status Notifications

Using Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS), you can receive email or text (SMS) messages when the status of your directory changes. You get notified if your directory goes from an Active status

to an [Impaired or Inoperable status](#). You also receive a notification when the directory returns to an Active status.

How It Works

Amazon SNS uses “topics” to collect and distribute messages. Each topic has one or more subscribers who receive the messages that have been published to that topic. Using the steps below you can add AWS Directory Service as publisher to an Amazon SNS topic. When AWS Directory Service detects a change in your directory’s status, it publishes a message to that topic, which is then sent to the topic’s subscribers.

You can associate multiple directories as publishers to a single topic. You can also add directory status messages to topics that you’ve previously created in Amazon SNS. You have detailed control over who can publish to and subscribe to a topic. For complete information about Amazon SNS, see [What is Amazon SNS?](#).

To enable SNS messaging for your directory

1. Sign in to the AWS Management Console and open the AWS Directory Service console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/directoryservicev2/>.
2. On the **Directories** page, choose your directory ID.
3. Select the **Maintenance** tab.
4. In the **Directory monitoring** section, choose **Actions**, and then select **Create notification**.
5. On the **Create notification** page, select **Choose a notification type**, and then choose **Create a new notification**. Alternatively, if you already have an existing SNS topic, you can choose **Associate existing SNS topic** to send status messages from this directory to that topic.

Note

If you choose **Create a new notification** but then use the same topic name for an SNS topic that already exists, Amazon SNS does not create a new topic, but just adds the new subscription information to the existing topic.

If you choose **Associate existing SNS topic**, you will only be able to choose an SNS topic that is in the same region as the directory.

6. Choose the **Recipient type** and enter the **Recipient** contact information. If you enter a phone number for SMS, use numbers only. Do not include dashes, spaces, or parentheses.
7. (Optional) Provide a name for your topic and an SNS display name. The display name is a short name up to 10 characters that is included in all SMS messages from this topic. When using the SMS option, the display name is required.

Note

If you are logged in using an IAM user or role that has only the [DirectoryServiceFullAccess](#) managed policy, your topic name must start with “DirectoryMonitoring”. If you’d like to further customize your topic name you’ll need additional privileges for SNS.

8. Choose **Create**.

If you want to designate additional SNS subscribers, such as an additional email address, Amazon SQS queues or AWS Lambda, you can do this from the Amazon SNS console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/sns/v3/home>.

To remove directory status messages from a topic

1. Sign in to the AWS Management Console and open the AWS Directory Service console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/directoryservicev2/>.
2. On the **Directories** page, choose your directory ID.
3. Select the **Maintenance** tab.

4. In the **Directory monitoring** section, select an SNS topic name in the list, choose **Actions**, and then select **Remove**.
5. Choose **Remove**.

This removes your directory as a publisher to the selected SNS topic. If you want to delete the entire topic, you can do this from the Amazon SNS console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/sns/v3/home>.

Note

Before deleting an Amazon SNS topic using the SNS console, you should ensure that a directory is not sending status messages to that topic.

If you delete an Amazon SNS topic using the SNS console, this change will not immediately be reflected within the Directory Services console. You would only be notified the next time a directory publishes a notification to the deleted topic, in which case you would see an updated status on the directory's **Monitoring** tab indicating the topic could not be found.

Therefore, to avoid missing important directory status messages, before deleting any topic that receives messages from AWS Directory Service, associate your directory with a different Amazon SNS topic.

Review Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Directory Logs

Security logs from AWS Managed Microsoft AD domain controller instances are archived for a year. You can also configure your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory to forward domain controller logs to Amazon CloudWatch Logs in near real time. For more information, see [Enable Log Forwarding \(p. 36\)](#).

AWS logs the following events for compliance.

Monitoring category	Policy setting	Audit state
Account Logon	Audit Credential Validation	Success, Failure
Account Management	Audit Computer Account Management	Success, Failure
	Audit Other Account Management Events	Success, Failure
	Audit Security Group Management	Success, Failure
	Audit User Account Management	Success, Failure
Detailed Tracking	Audit Process Creation	Success
DS Access	Audit Directory Service Access	Success, Failure
	Audit Directory Service Changes	Success, Failure
Logon/Logoff	Audit Account Lockout Success	Success, Failure
	Audit Logoff	Success
	Audit Logon	Success, Failure
	Audit Special Logon	Success
Object Access	Audit Removable Storage	Success, Failure
	Audit Central Access Policy Staging	Success, Failure

Monitoring category	Policy setting	Audit state
Policy Change	Audit Policy Change	Success, Failure
	Audit Authentication Policy Change	Success
	Audit Authorization Policy Change	Success, Failure
Privilege Use	Audit Sensitive Privilege Use	Success, Failure
System	Audit IPsec Driver	Success, Failure
	Audit Other System Events	Success, Failure
	Audit Security State Change	Success, Failure
	Audit Security System Extension	Success, Failure
	Audit System Integrity	Success, Failure

Enable Log Forwarding

You can use either the AWS Directory Service console or APIs to forward domain controller security event logs to Amazon CloudWatch Logs. This helps you to meet your security monitoring, audit, and log retention policy requirements by providing transparency of the security events in your directory.

CloudWatch Logs can also forward these events to other AWS accounts, AWS services, or third party applications. This makes it easier for you to centrally monitor and configure alerts to detect and respond proactively to unusual activities in near real time.

Once enabled, you can then use the CloudWatch Logs console to retrieve the data from the log group you specified when you enabled the service. This log group contains the security logs from your domain controllers.

For more information about log groups and how to read their data, see [Working with Log Groups and Log Streams](#) in the *Amazon CloudWatch Logs User Guide*.

To enable log forwarding

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, choose **Directories**.
2. Choose the directory ID of the AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory that you want to share.
3. On the **Directory details** page, choose the **Networking & security** tab.
4. In the **Log forwarding** section, choose **Enable**.
5. On the **Enable log forwarding to CloudWatch** dialog, choose either of the following options:
 - a. Select **Create a new CloudWatch log group**, under **Log group name**, specify a name that you can refer to in CloudWatch Logs.
 - b. Select **Choose an existing CloudWatch log group**, and under **Existing CloudWatch log groups**, select a log group from the menu.
6. Review the pricing information and link, and then choose **Enable**.

To disable log forwarding

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, choose **Directories**.

2. Choose the directory ID of the AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory that you want to share.
3. On the **Directory details** page, choose the **Networking & security** tab.
4. In the **Log forwarding** section, choose **Disable**.
5. Once you've read the information in the **Disable log forwarding** dialog, choose **Disable**.

Using the CLI to Enable Log Forwarding

Before you can use the `ds create-log-subscription` command, you must first create an Amazon CloudWatch log group and then create an IAM resource policy that will grant the necessary permission to that group. To enable log forwarding using the CLI, complete all of the steps below.

Step 1: Create a Log Group in CloudWatch Logs

Create a log group that will be used to receive the security logs from your domain controllers. We recommend pre-pending the name with `/aws/directoryservice/`, but that is not required. For example:

EXAMPLE CLI COMMAND

```
aws logs create-log-group --log-group-name '/aws/directoryservice/d-9876543210'
```

EXAMPLE POWERSHELL COMMAND

```
New-CWLLogGroup -LogGroupName '/aws/directoryservice/d-9876543210'
```

For instructions on how to create a CloudWatch Logs group, see [Create a Log Group in CloudWatch Logs](#) in the *Amazon CloudWatch Logs User Guide*.

Step 2: Create a CloudWatch Logs Resource Policy in IAM

Create a CloudWatch Logs resource policy granting AWS Directory Service rights to add logs into the new log group you created in Step 1. You can either specify the exact ARN to the log group to limit Directory Service's access to other log groups or use a wild card to include all log groups. The following sample policy uses the wild card method to identify that all log groups that start with `/aws/directoryservice/` for the AWS account where your directory resides will be included.

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Principal": {
        "Service": "ds.amazonaws.com"
      },
      "Action": [
        "logs:CreateLogStream",
        "logs:PutLogEvents"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws:logs:YOUR_REGION:YOUR_ACCOUNT_NUMBER:log-group:/aws/directoryservice/*"
    }
  ]
}
```

You will need to save this policy to a text file (for example `DSPolicy.json`) on your local workstation as you will need to run it from the CLI. For example:

EXAMPLE CLI COMMAND

```
aws logs put-resource-policy --policy-name DSLogSubscription --policy-document  
file://DSPolicy.json
```

EXAMPLE POWERSHELL COMMAND

```
$PolicyDocument = Get-Content .\DSPolicy.json -Raw  
  
Write-CWLResourcePolicy -PolicyName DSLogSubscription -PolicyDocument  
$PolicyDocument
```

Step 3: Create an AWS Directory Service Log Subscription

In this final step, you can now proceed to enable log forwarding by creating the log subscription. For example:

EXAMPLE CLI COMMAND

```
aws ds create-log-subscription --directory-id 'd-9876543210' --log-group-name  
'/aws/directoryservice/d-9876543210'
```

EXAMPLE POWERSHELL COMMAND

```
New-DSLogSubscription -DirectoryId 'd-9876543210' -LogGroupName '/aws/  
directoryservice/d-9876543210'
```

Share Your Directory

AWS Managed Microsoft AD integrates tightly with AWS Organizations to allow seamless directory sharing across multiple AWS accounts. You can share a single directory with other trusted AWS accounts within the same organization or share the directory with other AWS accounts that are outside your organization. You can also share your directory when your AWS account is not currently a member of an organization.

Note

AWS charges an additional fee for directory sharing. To learn more, see the [Pricing](#) page on the AWS Directory Service web site.

Directory sharing makes AWS Managed Microsoft AD a more cost-effective way of integrating with Amazon EC2 in multiple accounts and VPCs. Directory sharing is available in all [AWS Regions where AWS Managed Microsoft AD](#) is offered.

Note

In the AWS China (Ningxia) region, this feature is available only when using [AWS Systems Manager](#) (SSM) to seamlessly join your Amazon EC2 instances.

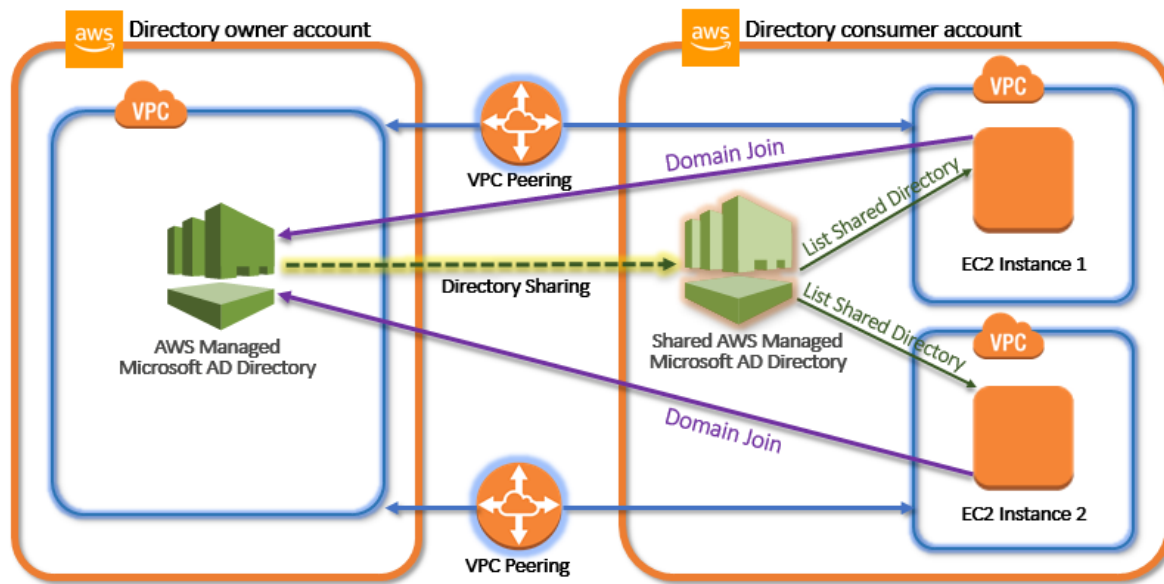
For more information about directory sharing and how to extend the reach of your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory across AWS account boundaries, see the following topics.

Topics

- [Key Directory Sharing Concepts](#) (p. 38)
- [Tutorial: Sharing Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Directory for Seamless EC2 Domain-Join](#) (p. 40)
- [Unshare Your Directory](#) (p. 46)

Key Directory Sharing Concepts

You'll get more out of the directory sharing feature if you become familiar with the following key concepts.



Directory Owner Account

A directory owner is the AWS account holder that owns the originating directory in the shared directory relationship. An administrator in this account initiates the directory sharing workflow by specifying which AWS accounts to share their directory with. Directory owners can see who they've shared a directory with using the **Scale & Share** tab for a given directory in the AWS Directory Service console.

Directory Consumer Account

In a shared directory relationship, a directory consumer represents the AWS account to which the directory owner shared the directory with. Depending on the sharing method used, an administrator in this account may need to accept an invite sent from the directory owner before they can start using the shared directory.

The directory sharing process creates a shared directory in the directory consumer account. This shared directory contains the metadata that enables the EC2 instance to seamlessly join the domain, which locates the originating directory in the directory owner account. Each shared directory in the directory consumer account has a unique identifier (**Shared directory ID**).

Sharing Methods

AWS Managed Microsoft AD provides the following two directory sharing methods:

- **AWS Organizations** – This method makes it easier to share the directory within your organization because you can browse and validate the directory consumer accounts. To use this option, your organization must have **All features** enabled, and your directory must be in the organization master account. This method of sharing simplifies your setup because it doesn't require the directory consumer accounts to accept your directory sharing request. In the console, this method is referred to as **Share this directory with AWS accounts inside your organization**.
- **Handshake** – This method enables directory sharing when you aren't using AWS Organizations. The handshake method requires the directory consumer account to accept the directory sharing request. In the console, this method is referred to as **Share this directory with other AWS accounts**.

VPC Peering

VPC peering is a networking connection made between two VPCs through which you can route traffic. This is a prerequisite to configuring a directory sharing relationship across AWS accounts. For more information, see [What is VPC Peering?](#)

To get started, see [Tutorial: Sharing Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Directory for Seamless EC2 Domain-Join](#) (p. 40).

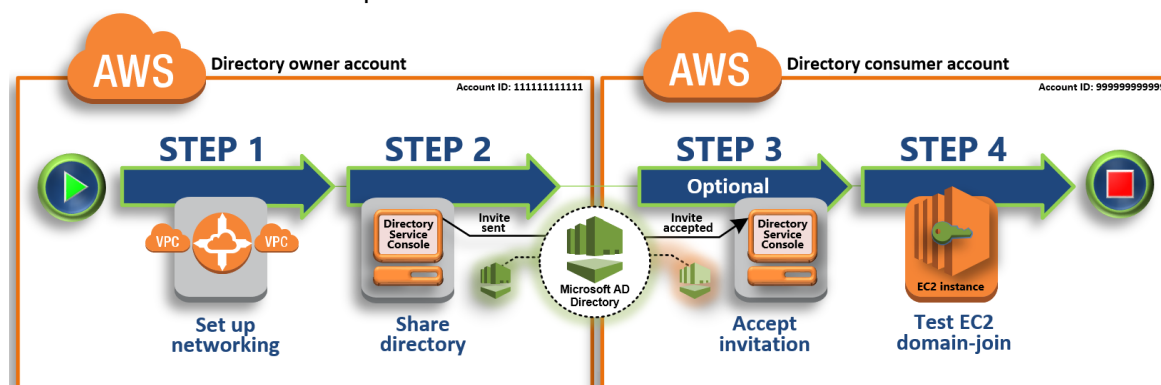
Tutorial: Sharing Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Directory for Seamless EC2 Domain-Join

This tutorial shows you how to share your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory (the directory owner account) with another AWS account (the directory consumer account). Once the networking prerequisites have been completed, you will share a directory between two AWS accounts. Then you'll learn how to seamlessly join an EC2 instance to a domain in the directory consumer account.

We recommend that you first review directory sharing key concepts and use case content before you start work on this tutorial. For more information, see [Key Directory Sharing Concepts](#) (p. 38).

The process for sharing your directory differs depending on whether you share the directory with another AWS account in the same AWS organization or with an account that is outside of the AWS organization. For more information about how sharing works, see [Sharing Methods](#) (p. 39).

This workflow has four basic steps.



Step 1: Set Up Your Networking Environment (p. 41)

In the directory owner account, you set up all of the networking prerequisites necessary for the directory sharing process.

Step 2: Share Your Directory (p. 42)

While signed in with directory owner administrator credentials, you open the AWS Directory Service console and start the share directory workflow, which sends an invitation to the directory consumer account.

Step 3: Accept Shared Directory Invite (Optional) (p. 43)

While signed in with directory consumer administrator credentials, you open the AWS Directory Service console and accept the directory sharing invite.

Step 4: Test Seamlessly Joining an EC2 Instance for Windows Server to a Domain (p. 43)

Finally, as the directory consumer administrator, you attempt to join an EC2 instance to your domain and verify that it works.

Additional Resources

- [Use Case: Share Your Directory to Seamlessly Join Amazon EC2 Instances to a Domain Across AWS Accounts](#)
- [AWS Security Blog Article: How to Join Amazon EC2 Instances From Multiple Accounts and VPCs to a Single AWS Managed Microsoft AD Directory](#)

Step 1: Set Up Your Networking Environment

Before you begin the steps in this tutorial, you must first do the following:

- Create two new AWS accounts for testing purposes in the same Region. When you create an AWS account, it automatically creates a dedicated virtual private cloud (VPC) in each account. Take note of the VPC ID in each account. You will need this later.
- Create a VPC peering connection between the two VPCs in each account using the procedures in this step.

Configure a VPC Peering Connection between the Directory Owner and the Directory Consumer account

The VPC peering connection you will create is between the directory consumer and directory owner VPCs. Follow these steps to configure a VPC peering connection for connectivity with the directory consumer account. With this connection you can route traffic between both VPCs using private IP addresses.

To create a VPC peering connection between the directory owner and directory consumer account

1. Open the Amazon VPC console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/vpc/>. Make sure to sign in as a user with administrator credentials in the directory owner account.
2. In the navigation pane, choose **Peering Connections**. Then choose **Create Peering Connection**.
3. Configure the following information:
 - **Peering connection name tag**: Provide a name that clearly identifies this connection with the VPC in the directory consumer account.
 - **VPC (Requester)**: Select the VPC ID for the directory owner account.
 - Under **Select another VPC to peer with**, ensure that **My account** and **This region** are selected.
 - **VPC (Accepter)**: Select the VPC ID for the directory consumer account.
4. Choose **Create Peering Connection**. In the confirmation dialog box, choose **OK**.

Since both VPCs are in the same Region, the administrator of the directory owner account who sent the VPC peering request can also accept the peering request on behalf of the directory consumer account.

To accept the peering request on behalf of the directory consumer account

1. Open the Amazon VPC console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/vpc/>.
2. In the navigation pane, choose **Peering Connections**.
3. Select the pending VPC peering connection. (Its status is Pending Acceptance.) Choose **Actions**, **Accept Request**.
4. In the confirmation dialog, choose **Yes, Accept**. In the next confirmation dialog box, choose **Modify my route tables now** to go directly to the route tables page.

Now that your VPC peering connection is active, you must add an entry to your VPC route table in the directory owner account. Doing so enables traffic to be directed to the VPC in the directory consumer account.

To add an entry to the VPC route table in the directory owner account

1. While in the **Route Tables** section of the Amazon VPC console, select the route table for the directory owner VPC.
2. Choose the **Routes** tab, choose **Edit**, and then choose **Add another route**.
3. In the **Destination** column, enter the CIDR block for the directory consumer VPC.
4. In the **Target** column, enter the VPC peering connection ID (such as **pcx-123456789abcde000**) for the peering connection that you created earlier in the directory owner account.
5. Choose **Save**.

To add an entry to the VPC route table in the directory consumer account

1. While in the **Route Tables** section of the Amazon VPC console, select the route table for the directory consumer VPC.
2. Choose the **Routes** tab, choose **Edit**, and then choose **Add another route**.
3. In the **Destination** column, enter the CIDR block for the directory owner VPC.
4. In the **Target** column, type in the VPC peering connection ID (such as **pcx-123456789abcde001**) for the peering connection that you created earlier in the directory consumer account.
5. Choose **Save**.

Make sure to configure your directory consumer VPCs' security group to enable outbound traffic by adding the Active Directory protocols and ports to the outbound rules table. For more information, see [Security Groups for Your VPC](#) and [AWS Managed Microsoft AD Prerequisites](#).

Next Step

[Step 2: Share Your Directory \(p. 42\)](#)

Step 2: Share Your Directory

Use the following procedures to begin the directory sharing workflow from within the directory owner account.

To share your directory from the directory owner account

1. Sign into the AWS Management Console with administrator credentials in the directory owner account and open the [AWS Directory Service console](https://console.aws.amazon.com/directoryservicev2/) at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/directoryservicev2/>.
2. In the navigation pane, choose **Directories**.
3. Choose the directory ID of the AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory that you want to share.
4. On the **Directory details** page, choose the **Scale & share** tab.
5. In the **Shared directories** section, choose **Actions**, and then choose **Create new shared directory**.
6. On the **Choose which AWS accounts to share with** page, choose one of the following sharing methods depending on your business needs:
 - a. **Share this directory with AWS accounts inside your organization** – With this option you can select the AWS accounts you want to share your directory with from a list showing all the AWS

accounts inside your AWS organization. You must enable trusted access with AWS Directory Service before you share a directory. For more information, see [How to Enable or Disable Trusted Access](#).

- i. Under **AWS accounts in your organization**, select the AWS accounts that you want to share the directory with and click **Add**.
 - ii. Review the pricing details, and then choose **Share**.
 - iii. Proceed to [Step 4 \(p. 43\)](#) in this guide. Because all AWS accounts are in the same organization, you do not need to follow Step 3.
- b. **Share this directory with other AWS accounts** - With this option, you can share a directory with accounts inside or outside your AWS organization. You can also use this option when your directory is not a member of an AWS organization and you want to share with another AWS account.
- i. In **AWS account ID(s)**, enter all the AWS account IDs that you want to share the directory with, and then click **Add**.
 - ii. In **Send a note**, type a message to the administrator in the other AWS account.
 - iii. Review the pricing details, and then choose **Share**.
 - iv. Proceed to Step 3.

Next Step

[Step 3: Accept Shared Directory Invite \(Optional\) \(p. 43\)](#)

Step 3: Accept Shared Directory Invite (Optional)

If you chose the **Share this directory with other AWS accounts** (handshake method) option in the previous procedure, you should use this procedure to finish the shared directory workflow. If you chose the **Share this directory with AWS accounts inside your organization** option, skip this step and proceed to Step 4.

To accept the shared directory invite

1. Sign into the AWS Management Console with administrator credentials in the directory consumer account and open the [AWS Directory Service console](https://console.aws.amazon.com/directoryservicev2/) at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/directoryservicev2/>.
2. In the navigation pane, choose **Directories shared with me**.
3. In the **Shared directory ID** column, choose the directory ID that is in the **Pending acceptance** state.
4. On the **Shared directory details** page, choose **Review**.
5. In the **Pending shared directory invitation** dialog, review the note, directory owner details, and information about pricing. If you agree, choose **Accept** to start using the directory.

Next Step

[Step 4: Test Seamlessly Joining an EC2 Instance for Windows Server to a Domain \(p. 43\)](#)

Step 4: Test Seamlessly Joining an EC2 Instance for Windows Server to a Domain

You can use either of the following two methods to test seamless domain join.

Method 1: Test domain join using the Amazon EC2 console

Use this step in the directory consumer account.

1. Sign in to the AWS Management Console and open the Amazon EC2 console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/ec2/>.
2. From the region selector in the navigation bar, choose the same region as the existing directory.
3. Choose **Launch Instance**.
4. On the **Step 1** page, choose **Select** for the appropriate AMI.
5. On the **Step 2** page, select the appropriate instance type, and then choose **Next: Configure Instance Details**.
6. On the **Step 3** page, do the following, and then choose **Next: Add Storage**:
 1. For **Network**, choose the VPC that your directory was created in.
 2. For **Subnet**, choose one of the public subnets in your VPC. The subnet that you choose must have all external traffic routed to an internet gateway. If this is not the case, you won't be able to connect to the instance remotely.
 3. For **Auto-assign Public IP**, choose **Enable**.

For more information about public and private IP addressing, see [Amazon EC2 Instance IP Addressing](#) in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide for Windows Instances*.

4. For **Domain join directory**, choose your domain from the list.

Note

This option is only available for Windows instances. Linux instances must be manually joined to the directory as explained in [Manually Join a Linux Instance \(p. 49\)](#).

5. For **IAM role**, do one of the following:

Select an IAM role that has the AWS managed policies **AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore** and **AmazonSSMDirectoryServiceAccess** attached to it.

-or-

If you haven't created an IAM role that has the **AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore** and **AmazonSSMDirectoryServiceAccess** managed policies attached to it, choose the **Create new IAM role** link, and then do the following:

- a. Choose **Create role**.
- b. Under **Select type of trusted entity**, choose **AWS service**.
- c. Under **Choose the service that this role will use**, in the full list of services, choose **EC2**.
- d. Under **Select your use case**, choose **EC2**, and then choose **Next: Permissions**.
- e. In the list of policies, select the **AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore** and **AmazonSSMDirectoryServiceAccess** policies. (To filter the list, type **SSM** in the search box.)

Note

AmazonSSMDirectoryServiceAccess provides the permissions to join instances to an Active Directory managed by AWS Directory Service.

AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore provides the minimum permissions necessary to use the Systems Manager service. For more information about creating a role with these permissions, and for information about other permissions and policies you can assign to your IAM role, see [Create an IAM Instance Profile for Systems Manager](#) in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- f. Choose **Next: Tags**.
- g. (Optional) Add one or more tag key-value pairs to organize, track, or control access for this role, and then choose **Next: Review**.
- h. For **Role name**, enter a name for your new role, such as **EC2DomainJoin** or another name that you prefer.
- i. (Optional) For **Role description**, enter a description.
- j. Choose **Create role**.

- k. Go back to the **Step 3** page. For **IAM role**, choose the refresh icon next to **IAM role**. Your new role should be visible in the menu. Choose it and leave the rest of the settings on this page with their default values, and then choose **Next: Add Storage**.
7. On both the **Step 4** and **Step 5** pages, leave the default settings or make changes as needed, and then choose the **Next** buttons.
8. On the **Step 6** page, select a security group for the instance that has been configured to allow remote access to the instance from your network, and then choose **Review and Launch**.
9. On the **Step 7** page, choose **Launch**, select a key pair, and then choose **Launch Instance**.

Method 2: Test domain join using the AWS Systems Manager console

Use this step in the directory consumer account. To complete this procedure, you'll need some information about the directory owner account.

Note

Make sure to attach the **AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore** and **AmazonSSMDirectoryServiceAccess** managed policies to the IAM role permissions for your instance before starting the steps in this procedure. For information about these managed policies and other policies you can attach to an IAM instance profile for Systems Manager, see [Create an IAM Instance Profile for Systems Manager](#) in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*. For information about managed policies, see [AWS Managed Policies](#) in the *IAM User Guide*.

1. Sign into the AWS Management Console and open the AWS Systems Manager console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/systems-manager/>.
2. In the navigation pane, choose **Run Command**.
3. Choose **Run command**.
4. On the **Run a command** page, search for **AWS-JoinDirectoryServiceDomain**. When it is displayed in the search results, select the **AWS-JoinDirectoryServiceDomain** option.
5. Scroll down to the **Command parameters** section. You must provide the following parameters:

- For **Directory Id**, enter the name of the AWS Directory Service directory.

Note

You can locate the **Directory Id** value by going back to the AWS Directory Service console, choosing **Directories shared with me**, selecting your directory, and then finding the value in the **Shared directory details** section.

- For **Directory Name**, enter the name of the directory (for the directory owner account).
- For **Dns Ip Addresses**, enter the IP addresses of the DNS servers in the directory (for the directory owner account).

Note

You can locate the values for **Directory Name** and **Dns Ip Addresses** by going back to the AWS Directory Service console, choosing **Directories shared with me**, selecting your directory, and then reviewing the attributes found in the **Owner directory details** section.

6. For **Targets**, select the instances that you want to domain join.
7. Leave the remainder of the form set to their default values, scroll down the page, and then choose **Run**.
8. In the navigation pane, choose **Managed Instances**.
9. Verify the instance successfully joined the domain by reviewing the instance in the list. If the **Association Status** displays **Success**, your instance has successfully joined the domain.

After completing either of these steps, you should now be able to join your EC2 instance to the domain. Once you do that, you can then log into your instance using a Remote Desktop Protocol (RDP) client with the credentials from your AWS Managed Microsoft AD user account.

Unshare Your Directory

Use the following procedure to unshare an AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory.

To unshare your directory

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, under **Active Directory**, select **Directories**.
2. Choose the directory ID of the AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory that you want to share.
3. On the **Directory details** page, choose the **Scale & share** tab.
4. In the **Shared directories** section, select the shared directory you want to unshare, choose **Actions**, and then choose **Unshare**.
5. In the **Unshare directory** dialog box, choose **Unshare**.

Additional Resources

- [Use Case: Share Your Directory to Seamlessly Join Amazon EC2 Instances to a Domain Across AWS Accounts](#)
- [AWS Security Blog Article: How to Join Amazon EC2 Instances From Multiple Accounts and VPCs to a Single AWS Managed Microsoft AD Directory](#)

Join an EC2 Instance to Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Directory

You can seamlessly join an EC2 instance to your directory domain when the instance is launched using AWS Systems Manager. For more information, see [Seamlessly Joining a Windows Instance to an AWS Directory Service Domain](#) in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide for Windows Instances*.

If you need to manually join an EC2 instance to your domain, you must launch the instance in the proper region and security group or subnet, then join the instance to the domain.

To be able to connect remotely to these instances, you must have IP connectivity to the instances from the network you are connecting from. In most cases, this requires that an internet gateway be attached to your VPC and that the instance has a public IP address.

Topics

- [Seamlessly Join a Windows EC2 Instance \(p. 46\)](#)
- [Manually Join a Windows Instance \(p. 48\)](#)
- [Manually Join a Linux Instance \(p. 49\)](#)
- [Delegate Directory Join Privileges for AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 57\)](#)
- [Create a DHCP Options Set \(p. 58\)](#)

Seamlessly Join a Windows EC2 Instance

This procedure seamlessly joins a Windows EC2 instance to your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory. If you need to perform seamless domain join across multiple AWS accounts, you can optionally choose to

enable [Directory sharing](#). For more information, see [Tutorial: Sharing Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Directory for Seamless EC2 Domain-Join](#) (p. 40).

To seamlessly join a Windows EC2 instance

1. Sign in to the AWS Management Console and open the Amazon EC2 console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/ec2/>.
2. From the region selector in the navigation bar, choose the same region as the existing directory.
3. Choose **Launch Instance**.
4. On the **Step 1** page, choose **Select** for the appropriate AMI.
5. On the **Step 2** page, select the appropriate instance type, and then choose **Next: Configure Instance Details**.
6. On the **Step 3** page, do the following, and then choose **Next: Add Storage**:
 1. For **Network**, choose the VPC that your directory was created in.
 2. For **Subnet**, choose one of the public subnets in your VPC. The subnet that you choose must have all external traffic routed to an internet gateway. If this is not the case, you won't be able to connect to the instance remotely.
 3. For **Auto-assign Public IP**, choose **Enable**.

For more information about public and private IP addressing, see [Amazon EC2 Instance IP Addressing](#) in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide for Windows Instances*.

4. For **Domain join directory**, choose your domain from the list.

Note

This option is only available for Windows instances. Linux instances must be manually joined to the directory as explained in [Manually Join a Linux Instance](#) (p. 49).

5. For **IAM role**, do one of the following:

Select an IAM role that has the AWS managed policies **AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore** and **AmazonSSMDirectoryServiceAccess** attached to it.

-or-

If you haven't created an IAM role that has the **AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore** and **AmazonSSMDirectoryServiceAccess** managed policies attached to it, choose the **Create new IAM role** link, and then do the following:

- a. Choose **Create role**.
- b. Under **Select type of trusted entity**, choose **AWS service**.
- c. Under **Choose the service that this role will use**, in the full list of services, choose **EC2**.
- d. Under **Select your use case**, choose **EC2**, and then choose **Next: Permissions**.
- e. In the list of policies, select the **AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore** and **AmazonSSMDirectoryServiceAccess** policies. (To filter the list, type **SSM** in the search box.)

Note

AmazonSSMDirectoryServiceAccess provides the permissions to join instances to an Active Directory managed by AWS Directory Service.

AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore provides the minimum permissions necessary to use the Systems Manager service. For more information about creating a role with these permissions, and for information about other permissions and policies you can assign to your IAM role, see [Create an IAM Instance Profile for Systems Manager](#) in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- f. Choose **Next: Tags**.
- g. (Optional) Add one or more tag key-value pairs to organize, track, or control access for this role, and then choose **Next: Review**.

- h. For **Role name**, enter a name for your new role, such as **EC2DomainJoin** or another name that you prefer.
 - i. (Optional) For **Role description**, enter a description.
 - j. Choose **Create role**.
 - k. Go back to the **Step 3** page. For **IAM role**, choose the refresh icon next to **IAM role**. Your new role should be visible in the menu. Choose it and leave the rest of the settings on this page with their default values, and then choose **Next: Add Storage**.
7. On both the **Step 4** and **Step 5** pages, leave the default settings or make changes as needed, and then choose the **Next** buttons.
8. On the **Step 6** page, select a security group for the instance that has been configured to allow remote access to the instance from your network, and then choose **Review and Launch**.
9. On the **Step 7** page, choose **Launch**, select a key pair, and then choose **Launch Instance**.

Manually Join a Windows Instance

To manually join an existing Amazon EC2 Windows instance to a Simple AD or AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory directory, the instance must be launched as specified in [Seamlessly Join a Windows EC2 Instance \(p. 46\)](#).

To join a Windows instance to a Simple AD or AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory

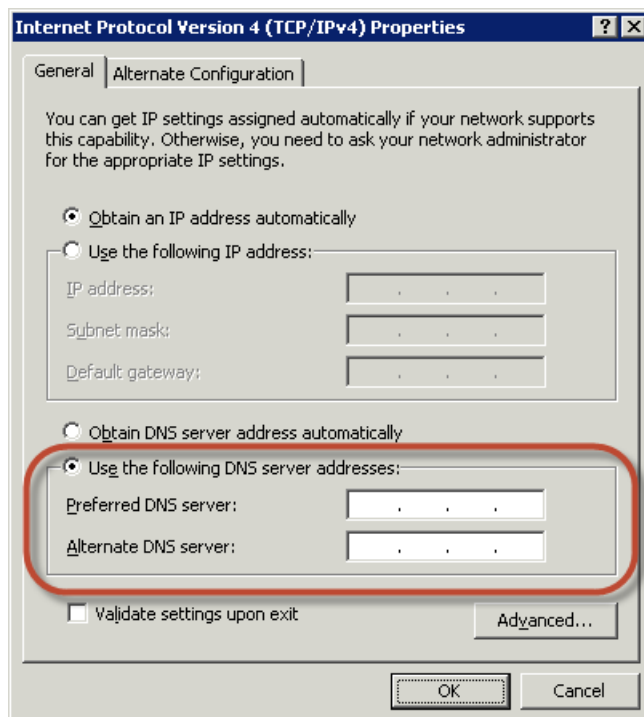
1. Connect to the instance using any Remote Desktop Protocol client.
2. Open the TCP/IPv4 properties dialog box on the instance.
 - a. Open **Network Connections**.

Tip

You can open **Network Connections** directly by running the following from a command prompt on the instance.

```
%SystemRoot%\system32\control.exe ncpa.cpl
```

 - b. Open the context menu (right-click) for any enabled network connection and then choose **Properties**.
 - c. In the connection properties dialog box, open (double-click) **Internet Protocol Version 4**.
3. Select **Use the following DNS server addresses**, change the **Preferred DNS server** and **Alternate DNS server** addresses to the IP addresses of the AWS Directory Service-provided DNS servers, and choose **OK**.



4. Open the **System Properties** dialog box for the instance, select the **Computer Name** tab, and choose **Change**.

Tip

You can open the **System Properties** dialog box directly by running the following from a command prompt on the instance.

```
%SystemRoot%\system32\control.exe sysdm.cpl
```

5. In the **Member of** field, select **Domain**, enter the fully-qualified name of your AWS Directory Service directory, and choose **OK**.
6. When prompted for the name and password for the domain administrator, enter the username and password of an account that has domain join privileges. For more information about delegating these privileges, see [Delegate Directory Join Privileges for AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 57\)](#).

Note

You can enter either the fully-qualified name of your domain or the NetBios name, followed by a backslash (\), and then the user name, in this case, **administrator**. For example, **corp.example.com\administrator** or **corp\administrator**.

7. After you receive the message welcoming you to the domain, restart the instance to have the changes take effect.

Now that your instance has been joined to the domain, you can log into that instance remotely and install utilities to manage the directory, such as adding users and groups.

Manually Join a Linux Instance

In addition to Amazon EC2 Windows instances, you can also join certain Amazon EC2 Linux instances to your AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory directory. The following Linux instance distributions and versions are supported:

- Amazon Linux AMI 2015.03

- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.2
- Ubuntu Server 14.04 LTS
- CentOS 7

Note

Other Linux distributions and versions may work but have not been tested.

Join an Instance to Your Directory

Before you can join either an Amazon Linux, CentOS, Red Hat, or Ubuntu instance to your directory, the instance must first be launched as specified in [Seamlessly Join a Windows EC2 Instance \(p. 46\)](#).

Important

Some of the following procedures, if not performed correctly, can render your instance unreachable or unusable. Therefore, we strongly suggest you make a backup or take a snapshot of your instance before performing these procedures.

To join a linux instance to your directory

Follow the steps for your specific Linux instance using one of the following tabs:

Amazon Linux

1. Connect to the instance using any SSH client.
2. Configure the Linux instance to use the DNS server IP addresses of the AWS Directory Service-provided DNS servers. You can do this either by setting it up in the DHCP Options set attached to the VPC or by setting it manually on the instance. If you want to set it manually, see [How do I assign a static DNS server to a private Amazon EC2 instance](#) in the AWS Knowledge Center for guidance on setting the persistent DNS server for your particular Linux distribution and version.
3. Make sure your Amazon Linux - 64bit instance is up to date.

```
sudo yum -y update
```

4. Install the required Amazon Linux packages on your Linux instance.

Note

Some of these packages may already be installed.

As you install the packages, you might be presented with several pop-up configuration screens. You can generally leave the fields in these screens blank.

Amazon Linux 1

```
sudo yum -y install sssd realmd krb5-workstation
```

Amazon Linux 2

```
sudo yum -y install sssd realmd krb5-workstation samba-common-tools
```

Note

For help with determining the Amazon Linux version you are using, see [Identifying Amazon Linux Images](#) in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide for Linux Instances*.

5. Join the instance to the directory with the following command.

```
sudo realm join -U join_account@example.com example.com --verbose
```

`join_account@example.com`

An account in the `example.com` domain that has domain join privileges. Enter the password for the account when prompted. For more information about delegating these privileges, see [Delegate Directory Join Privileges for AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 57\)](#).

`example.com`

The fully-qualified DNS name of your directory.

```
...
* Successfully enrolled machine in realm
```

6. Set the SSH service to allow password authentication.

- a. Open the `/etc/ssh/sshd_config` file in a text editor.

```
sudo vi /etc/ssh/sshd_config
```

- b. Set the `PasswordAuthentication` setting to `yes`.

```
PasswordAuthentication yes
```

- c. Restart the SSH service.

```
sudo systemctl restart sshd.service
```

Alternatively:

```
sudo service sshd restart
```

7. After the instance has restarted, connect to it with any SSH client and add the AWS Delegated Administrators group to the sudoers list by performing the following steps:

- a. Open the `sudoers` file with the following command:

```
sudo visudo
```

- b. Add the following to the bottom of the `sudoers` file and save it.

```
## Add the "AWS Delegated Administrators" group from the example.com domain.
%AWS\ Delegated\ Administrators@example.com ALL=(ALL:ALL) ALL
```

(The above example uses `"\<space>"` to create the Linux space character.)

CentOS

1. Connect to the instance using any SSH client.
2. Configure the Linux instance to use the DNS server IP addresses of the AWS Directory Service-provided DNS servers. You can do this either by setting it up in the DHCP Options set attached to the VPC or by setting it manually on the instance. If you want to set it manually, see [How do I assign a static DNS server to a private Amazon EC2 instance](#) in the AWS Knowledge Center for guidance on setting the persistent DNS server for your particular Linux distribution and version.
3. Make sure your CentOS 7 instance is up to date.


```
sudo yum -y update
```

4. Install the required CentOS 7 packages on your Linux instance.

Note

Some of these packages may already be installed.

As you install the packages, you might be presented with several pop-up configuration screens. You can generally leave the fields in these screens blank.

```
sudo yum -y install sssd realmd krb5-workstation samba-common-tools
```

5. Join the instance to the directory with the following command.

```
sudo realm join -U join_account@example.com example.com --verbose
```

join_account@example.com

An account in the *example.com* domain that has domain join privileges. Enter the password for the account when prompted. For more information about delegating these privileges, see [Delegate Directory Join Privileges for AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 57\)](#).

example.com

The fully-qualified DNS name of your directory.

```
...  
* Successfully enrolled machine in realm
```

6. Set the SSH service to allow password authentication.
 - a. Open the `/etc/ssh/sshd_config` file in a text editor.

```
sudo vi /etc/ssh/sshd_config
```

- b. Set the `PasswordAuthentication` setting to `yes`.

```
PasswordAuthentication yes
```

- c. Restart the SSH service.

```
sudo systemctl restart sshd.service
```

Alternatively:

```
sudo service sshd restart
```

7. After the instance has restarted, connect to it with any SSH client and add the AWS Delegated Administrators group to the sudoers list by performing the following steps:

- a. Open the sudoers file with the following command:

```
sudo visudo
```

- b. Add the following to the bottom of the sudoers file and save it.

```
## Add the "AWS Delegated Administrators" group from the example.com domain.  
%AWS\ Delegated\ Administrators@example.com ALL=(ALL:ALL) ALL
```

(The above example uses "<space>" to create the Linux space character.)

Red Hat

1. Connect to the instance using any SSH client.
2. Configure the Linux instance to use the DNS server IP addresses of the AWS Directory Service-provided DNS servers. You can do this either by setting it up in the DHCP Options set attached to the VPC or by setting it manually on the instance. If you want to set it manually, see [How do I assign a static DNS server to a private Amazon EC2 instance](#) in the AWS Knowledge Center for guidance on setting the persistent DNS server for your particular Linux distribution and version.
3. Make sure the Red Hat - 64bit instance is up to date.

```
sudo yum -y update
```

4. Install the required Red Hat packages on your Linux instance.

Note

Some of these packages may already be installed.

As you install the packages, you might be presented with several pop-up configuration screens. You can generally leave the fields in these screens blank.

```
sudo yum -y install sssd realmd krb5-workstation samba-common-tools
```

5. Join the instance to the directory with the following command.

```
sudo realm join -v -U join_account example.com --install=
```

join_account

An account in the *example.com* domain that has domain join privileges. Enter the password for the account when prompted. For more information about delegating these privileges, see [Delegate Directory Join Privileges for AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 57\)](#).

example.com

The fully-qualified DNS name of your directory.

```
...
* Successfully enrolled machine in realm
```

6. Set the SSH service to allow password authentication.
 - a. Open the `/etc/ssh/sshd_config` file in a text editor.

```
sudo vi /etc/ssh/sshd_config
```

- b. Set the `PasswordAuthentication` setting to `yes`.

```
PasswordAuthentication yes
```

- c. Restart the SSH service.

```
sudo systemctl restart sshd.service
```

Version 1.0

Alternatively:

```
sudo service sshd restart
```

7. After the instance has restarted, connect to it with any SSH client and add the AWS Delegated Administrators group to the sudoers list by performing the following steps:

- a. Open the sudoers file with the following command:

```
sudo visudo
```

- b. Add the following to the bottom of the sudoers file and save it.

```
## Add the "AWS Delegated Administrators" group from the example.com domain.  
%AWS\ Delegated\ Administrators@example.com ALL=(ALL:ALL) ALL
```

(The above example uses "<space>" to create the Linux space character.)

Ubuntu

1. Connect to the instance using any SSH client.
2. Configure the Linux instance to use the DNS server IP addresses of the AWS Directory Service-provided DNS servers. You can do this either by setting it up in the DHCP Options set attached to the VPC or by setting it manually on the instance. If you want to set it manually, see [How do I assign a static DNS server to a private Amazon EC2 instance](#) in the AWS Knowledge Center for guidance on setting the persistent DNS server for your particular Linux distribution and version.
3. Make sure your Ubuntu - 64bit instance is up to date.

```
sudo apt-get update  
sudo apt-get -y upgrade
```

4. Install the required Ubuntu packages on your Linux instance.

Note

Some of these packages may already be installed.

As you install the packages, you might be presented with several pop-up configuration screens. You can generally leave the fields in these screens blank.

```
sudo apt-get -y install sssd realmd krb5-user samba-common packagekit adcli
```

5. Disable Reverse DNS resolution. Ubuntu Instances **must** be reverse-resolvable in DNS before the realm will work. Otherwise, you have to disable reverse DNS in `/etc/krb5.conf` as follows:

```
[libdefaults]  
default_realm = EXAMPLE.COM  
rdns = false
```

6. Join the instance to the directory with the following command.

```
sudo realm join -U join_account@example.com example.com --verbose
```

Note

If you are using Ubuntu 16.04, you must enter the domain name portion of the username with all capital letters. For example, `join_account@EXAMPLE.COM` *example.com* -- verbose.

join_account@example.com

An account in the *example.com* domain that has domain join privileges. Enter the password for the account when prompted. For more information about delegating these privileges, see [Delegate Directory Join Privileges for AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 57\)](#).

example.com

The fully-qualified DNS name of your directory.

```
...
* Successfully enrolled machine in realm
```

7. Set the SSH service to allow password authentication.
 - a. Open the `/etc/ssh/sshd_config` file in a text editor.

```
sudo vi /etc/ssh/sshd_config
```

- b. Set the `PasswordAuthentication` setting to `yes`.

```
PasswordAuthentication yes
```

- c. Restart the SSH service.

```
sudo systemctl restart sshd.service
```

Alternatively:

```
sudo service sshd restart
```

8. After the instance has restarted, connect to it with any SSH client and add the AWS Delegated Administrators group to the `sudoers` list by performing the following steps:
 - a. Open the `sudoers` file with the following command:

```
sudo visudo
```

- b. Add the following to the bottom of the `sudoers` file and save it.

```
## Add the "AWS Delegated Administrators" group from the example.com domain.
%AWS\ Delegated\ Administrators@example.com ALL=(ALL:ALL) ALL
```

(The above example uses `"\<space>"` to create the Linux space character.)

Restricting Account Login Access

Since all accounts are defined in Active Directory, by default, all the users in the directory can log in to the instance. You can allow only specific users to log in to the instance with `ad_access_filter` in `sssd.conf`. For example:

```
ad_access_filter = (memberOf=cn=admins,ou=Testou,dc=example,dc=com)
```

memberOf

Indicates that users should only be allowed access to the instance if they are a member of a specific group.

cn

The canonical name of the group that should have access. In this example, the group name is *admins*.

ou

This is the organizational unit in which the above group is located. In this example, the OU is *Testou*.

dc

This is the domain component of your domain. In this example, *example*.

dc

This is an additional domain component. In this example, *com*.

You must manually add **ad_access_filter** to your **/etc/sss/sss.conf**. After you do this, your **sss.conf** might look like this:

```
[sss]
domains = example.com
config_file_version = 2
services = nss, pam

[domain/example.com]
ad_domain = example.com
krb5_realm = EXAMPLE.COM
realmd_tags = manages-system joined-with-samba
cache_credentials = True
id_provider = ad
krb5_store_password_if_offline = True
default_shell = /bin/bash
ldap_id_mapping = True
use_fully_qualified_names = True
fallback_homedir = /home/%u@d
access_provider = ad
ad_access_filter = (memberOf=cn=admins,ou=Testou,dc=example,dc=com)
```

In order for the configuration to take affect you need to restart the sssd service:

```
sudo systemctl restart sssd.service
```

Alternatively, you could use:

```
sudo service sssd start
```

Connect to the Instance

When a user connects to the instance using an SSH client, they are prompted for their username. The user can enter the username in either the `username@example.com` or `EXAMPLE\username` format. The response will appear similar to the following:

```
login as: johndoe@example.com
johndoe@example.com's password:
Last login: Thu Jun 25 16:26:28 2015 from XX.XX.XX.XX
```

Delegate Directory Join Privileges for AWS Managed Microsoft AD

To join a computer to your directory, you need an account that has privileges to join computers to the directory.

With AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory, members of the **Admins** and **AWS Delegated Server Administrators** groups have these privileges.

However, as a best practice, you should use an account that has only the minimum privileges necessary. The following procedure demonstrates how to create a new group called **Joiners** and delegate the privileges to this group that are needed to join computers to the directory.

You must perform this procedure on a machine that is joined to your directory and has the **Active Directory User and Computers** MMC snap-in installed. You must also be logged in as a domain administrator.

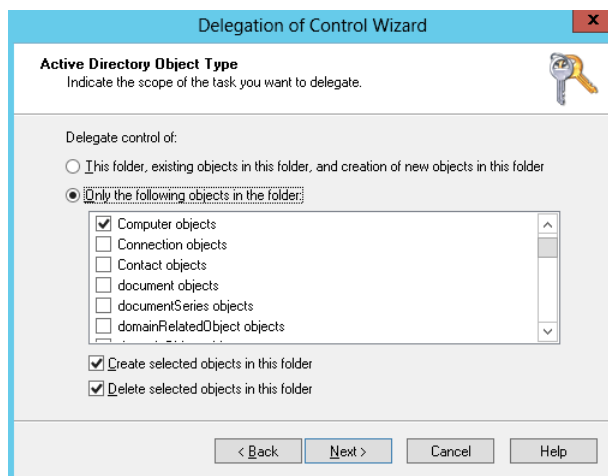
To delegate join privileges for AWS Managed Microsoft AD

1. Open **Active Directory User and Computers** and select the organizational unit (OU) that has your NetBIOS name in the navigation tree, then select the **Users** OU.

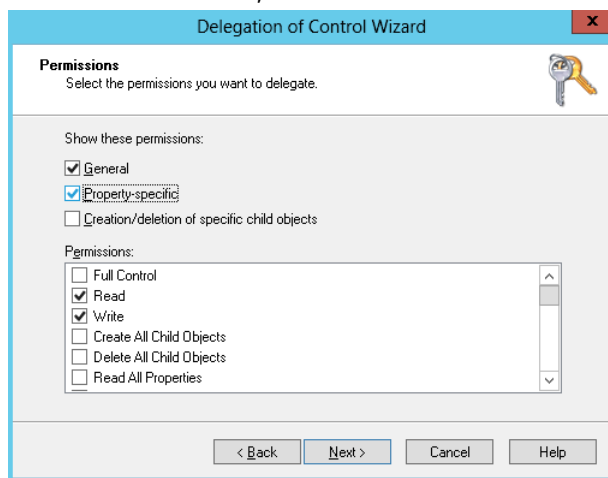
Important

When you launch a AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory, AWS creates an organizational unit (OU) that contains all your directory's objects. This OU, which has the NetBIOS name that you typed when you created your directory, is located in the domain root. The domain root is owned and managed by AWS. You cannot make changes to the domain root itself, therefore, you must create the **Joiners** group within the OU that has your NetBIOS name.

2. Open the context menu (right-click) for **Users**, choose **New**, and then choose **Group**.
3. In the **New Object - Group** box, type the following and choose **OK**.
 - For **Group name**, type **Joiners**.
 - For **Group scope**, choose **Global**.
 - For **Group type**, choose **Security**.
4. In the navigation tree, select the **Computers** container under your NetBIOS name. From the **Action** menu, choose **Delegate Control**.
5. On the **Delegation of Control Wizard** page, choose **Next**, and then choose **Add**.
6. In the **Select Users, Computers, or Groups** box, type **Joiners** and choose **OK**. If more than one object is found, select the **Joiners** group created above. Choose **Next**.
7. On the **Tasks to Delegate** page, select **Create a custom task to delegate**, and then choose **Next**.
8. Select **Only the following objects in the folder**, and then select **Computer objects**.
9. Select **Create selected objects in this folder** and **Delete selected objects in this folder**. Then choose **Next**.



10. Select **Read** and **Write**, and then choose **Next**.



11. Verify the information on the **Completing the Delegation of Control Wizard** page and choose **Finish**.
12. Create a user with a strong password and add that user to the **Joiners** group. This user must be in the **Users** container that is under your NetBIOS name. The user will then have sufficient privileges to connect instances to the directory.

Create a DHCP Options Set

AWS recommends that you create a DHCP options set for your AWS Directory Service directory and assign the DHCP options set to the VPC that your directory is in. This allows any instances in that VPC to point to the specified domain and DNS servers to resolve their domain names.

For more information about DHCP options sets, see [DHCP Options Sets](#) in the *Amazon VPC User Guide*.

To create a DHCP options set for your directory

1. Open the Amazon VPC console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/vpc/>.
2. In the navigation pane, choose **DHCP Options Sets**, and then choose **Create DHCP options set**.
3. On the **Create DHCP options set** page, enter the following values for your directory:

Name

An optional tag for the options set.

Domain name

The fully-qualified name of your directory, such as `corp.example.com`.

Domain name servers

The IP addresses of your AWS-provided directory's DNS servers.

Note

You can find these addresses by going to the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, selecting **Directories** and then choosing the correct directory ID.

NTP servers

Leave this field blank.

NetBIOS name servers

Leave this field blank.

NetBIOS node type

Leave this field blank.

4. Choose **Create DHCP options set**. The new set of DHCP options appears in your list of DHCP options.
5. Make a note of the ID of the new set of DHCP options (dopt-~~xxxxxxxx~~). You use it to associate the new options set with your VPC.

To change the DHCP options set associated with a VPC

After you create a set of DHCP options, you can't modify them. If you want your VPC to use a different set of DHCP options, you must create a new set and associate them with your VPC. You can also set up your VPC to use no DHCP options at all.

1. Open the Amazon VPC console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/vpc/>.
2. In the navigation pane, choose **Your VPCs**.
3. Select the VPC, and then choose **Actions, Edit DHCP options set**.
4. For **DHCP options set**, select an options set or choose **No DHCP options set**, and then choose **Save**.

Manage Users and Groups in AWS Managed Microsoft AD

Users represent individual people or entities that have access to your directory. Groups are very useful for giving or denying privileges to groups of users, rather than having to apply those privileges to each individual user. If a user moves to a different organization, you move that user to a different group and they automatically receive the privileges needed for the new organization.

To create users and groups in an AWS Directory Service directory, you must use any instance (from either on-premises or EC2) that has been joined to your AWS Directory Service directory, and be logged in as a user that has privileges to create users and groups. You will also need to install the Active Directory Tools on your EC2 instance so you can add your users and groups with the Active Directory Users and Computers snap-in. For more information about how to set up an EC2 instance and install the necessary tools, see [Step 3: Deploy an EC2 Instance to Manage AWS Managed Microsoft AD](#) (p. 117).

Note

Your user accounts must have Kerberos preauthentication enabled. This is the default setting for new user accounts, but it should not be modified. For more information about this setting, go to [Preauthentication](#) on Microsoft TechNet.

The following topics include instructions on how to create and manage users and groups.

Topics

- [Installing the Active Directory Administration Tools \(p. 60\)](#)
- [Create a User \(p. 61\)](#)
- [Reset a User Password \(p. 62\)](#)
- [Create a Group \(p. 63\)](#)
- [Add a User to a Group \(p. 63\)](#)

Installing the Active Directory Administration Tools

To manage your directory from an EC2 Windows instance, you need to install the Active Directory Domain Services and Active Directory Lightweight Directory Services Tools on the instance.

Topics

- [Install the Active Directory Administration Tools on Windows Server 2008 \(p. 60\)](#)
- [Install the Active Directory Administration Tools on Windows Server 2012 \(p. 60\)](#)
- [Install the Active Directory Administration Tools on Windows Server 2016 \(p. 61\)](#)
- [Install the Active Directory Administration Tools on Windows Server 2019 \(p. 61\)](#)

You can optionally choose to install the Active Directory administration tools using Windows PowerShell. For example, you can install the Active Directory remote administration tools from a PowerShell prompt using `Install-WindowsFeature RSAT-ADDS`. For more information, see [Install-WindowsFeature](#) on the Microsoft Website.

Install the Active Directory Administration Tools on Windows Server 2008

To install the Active Directory administration tools on Windows Server 2008

1. Open Server Manager by choosing **Start, Administrative Tools, Server Manager**.
2. In the **Server Manager** tree pane, select **Features**, and choose **Add Features**,
3. In the **Add Features Wizard**, open **Remote Server Administration Tools, Role Administration Tools**, select **AD DS and AD LDS Tools**, scroll down and select **DNS**, then choose **Next**.
4. Review the information and choose **Install**. The feature installation requires that the instance be restarted. When the instance has restarted, the Active Directory Domain Services and Active Directory Lightweight Directory Services Tools are available on the **Start** menu, under **All Programs > Administrative Tools**.

Install the Active Directory Administration Tools on Windows Server 2012

To install the Active Directory administration tools on Windows Server 2012

1. Open Server Manager from the Start screen by choosing **Server Manager**.
2. In the **Server Manager Dashboard**, choose **Add roles and features**,

3. In the **Add Roles and Features Wizard** choose **Installation Type**, select **Role-based or feature-based installation**, and choose **Next**.
4. Under **Server Selection**, make sure the local server is selected, and choose **Features** in the left navigation pane.
5. In the **Features** tree, open **Remote Server Administration Tools, Role Administration Tools**, select **AD DS and AD LDS Tools**, scroll down and select **DNS Server Tools**, and then choose **Next**.
6. Review the information and choose **Install**. When the feature installation is finished, the Active Directory Domain Services and Active Directory Lightweight Directory Services Tools are available on the Start screen in the **Administrative Tools** folder.

Install the Active Directory Administration Tools on Windows Server 2016

To install the Active Directory administration tools on Windows Server 2016

1. Open Server Manager from the Start screen by choosing **Server Manager**.
2. In the **Server Manager Dashboard**, choose **Add roles and features**,
3. In the **Add Roles and Features Wizard** choose **Installation Type**, select **Role-based or feature-based installation**, and choose **Next**.
4. Under **Server Selection**, make sure the local server is selected, and choose **Features** in the left navigation pane.
5. In the **Features** tree, open **Remote Server Administration Tools, Role Administration Tools**, select **AD DS and AD LDS Tools**, scroll down and select **DNS Server Tools**, and then choose **Next**.
6. Review the information and choose **Install**. When the feature installation is finished, the Active Directory tools are available on the Start screen in the **Administrative Tools** folder.

Install the Active Directory Administration Tools on Windows Server 2019

To install the Active Directory administration tools on Windows Server 2019

1. Open Server Manager from the Start screen by choosing **Server Manager**.
2. In the **Server Manager Dashboard**, choose **Add roles and features**,
3. In the **Add Roles and Features Wizard** choose **Installation Type**, select **Role-based or feature-based installation**, and choose **Next**.
4. Under **Server Selection**, make sure the local server is selected, and choose **Features** in the left navigation pane.
5. In the **Features** tree, open **Remote Server Administration Tools, Role Administration Tools**, select **AD DS and AD LDS Tools**, scroll down and select **DNS Server Tools**, and then choose **Next**.
6. Review the information and choose **Install**. When the feature installation is finished, the Active Directory tools are available on the Start screen in the **Administrative Tools** folder.

Create a User

Use the following procedure to create a user with an EC2 instance that is joined to your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory.

To create a user

1. Open the Active Directory Users and Computers tool. There is a shortcut to this tool in the **Administrative Tools** folder.

Tip

You can run the following from a command prompt on the instance to open the Active Directory Users and Computers tool box directly.

```
%SystemRoot%\system32\dsa.msc
```

2. In the directory tree, select an OU under your directory's NetBIOS name OU where you want to store your user (for example, Corp\Users). For more information about the OU structure used by directories in AWS, see [What Gets Created \(p. 11\)](#).
3. On the **Action** menu, click **New**, and then click **User** to open the new user wizard.
4. On the first page of the wizard, enter the values for the following fields, and then click **Next**.
 - **First name**
 - **Last name**
 - **User logon name**
5. On the second page of the wizard, type a temporary password in **Password** and **Confirm Password**. Make sure the **User must change password at next logon** option is selected. None of the other options should be selected. Click **Next**.
6. On the third page of the wizard, verify that the new user information is correct and click **Finish**. The new user will appear in the **Users** folder.

Reset a User Password

Users must adhere to password policies as defined in the directory. Sometimes this can get the best of users, including the directory admin, and they forget their password. When this happens, you can quickly reset the user's password using AWS Directory Service if the user resides in either a Simple AD or AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory.

You can reset the password for any user in your directory with the following exceptions:

- For Simple AD, you cannot reset the password for any user that is a member of either the **Domain Admins** or **Enterprise Admins** group except for the Administrator user.
- For AWS Managed Microsoft AD, you cannot reset the password for any user that is in an OU other than the OU that is based off of the NetBIOS name you typed when you created your directory. For example, you cannot reset the password for a user in the **AWS Reserved** OU. For more information about the OU structure for an AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory, see [What Gets Created \(p. 11\)](#).

You can use any of the following methods to reset a user's password.

Method 1: To reset a user password (AWS Management Console)

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, under **Active Directory**, choose **Directories**, and then select the directory in the list where you want to reset a user's password.
2. Choose **Actions**, and then choose **Reset user password**.
3. In the **Reset user password** dialog, in **Username** type the username of the user whose password needs to change.
4. Type a password in **New password** and **Confirm Password**, and then choose **Reset password**.

Method 2: To reset a user password (Windows PowerShell)

1. Open Windows PowerShell.

2. Type the following command and replace the username "joebob" and password "P@ssw0rd" with your desired credentials. See [Reset-DSUserPassword Cmdlet](#) for more information.

```
Reset-DSUserPassword -UserName joebob -DirectoryId d-1234567890 -NewPassword P@ssw0rd
```

Method 3: To reset a user password (AWS CLI)

1. Open the AWS CLI.
2. Type the following command and replace the username "joebob" and password "P@ssw0rd" with your desired credentials. See [reset-user-password](#) in the *AWS CLI Command Reference* for more information.

```
aws ds reset-user-password --directory-id d-1234567890 --user-name joebob --new-password P@ssw0rd
```

Create a Group

Use the following procedure to create a security group with an EC2 instance that is joined to your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory.

To create a group

1. Open the Active Directory Users and Computers tool. There is a shortcut to this tool in the **Administrative Tools** folder.

Tip

You can run the following from a command prompt on the instance to open the Active Directory Users and Computers tool box directly.

```
%SystemRoot%\system32\dsa.msc
```

2. In the directory tree, select an OU under your directory's NetBIOS name OU where you want to store your group (for example, Corp\Users). For more information about the OU structure used by directories in AWS, see [What Gets Created](#) (p. 11).
3. On the **Action** menu, click **New**, and then click **Group** to open the new group wizard.
4. Type a name for the group in **Group name**, select a **Group scope**, and select **Security** for the **Group type**.
5. Click **OK**. The new security group will appear in the **Users** folder.

Add a User to a Group

Use the following procedure to add a user to a security group with an EC2 instance that is joined to your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory.

To add a user to a group

1. Open the Active Directory Users and Computers tool. There is a shortcut to this tool in the **Administrative Tools** folder.

Tip

You can run the following from a command prompt on the instance to open the Active Directory Users and Computers tool box directly.

```
%SystemRoot%\system32\dsa.msc
```

2. In the directory tree, select the OU under your directory's NetBIOS name OU where you stored your group, and select the group that you want to add a user as a member.
3. On the **Action** menu, click **Properties** to open the properties dialog box for the group.
4. Select the **Members** tab and click **Add**.
5. For **Enter the object names to select**, type the username you want to add and click **OK**. The name will be displayed in the **Members** list. Click **OK** again to update the group membership.
6. Verify that the user is now a member of the group by selecting the user in the **Users** folder and clicking **Properties** in the **Action** menu to open the properties dialog box. Select the **Member Of** tab. You should see the name of the group in the list of groups that the user belongs to.

Connect to Your Existing AD Infrastructure

This section describes how to configure trust relationships between AWS Managed Microsoft AD and your existing AD infrastructure.

Topics

- [When to Create a Trust Relationship \(p. 64\)](#)
- [Tutorial: Create a Trust Relationship Between Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD and Your On-Premises Domain \(p. 71\)](#)

When to Create a Trust Relationship

You can configure one and two-way external and forest trust relationships between your AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory and on-premises directories, as well as between multiple AWS Managed Microsoft AD directories in the AWS cloud. AWS Managed Microsoft AD supports all three trust relationship directions: Incoming, Outgoing and Two-way (Bi-directional).

Note

When setting up trust relationships, you must ensure that your on-premises directory is and remains compatible with AWS Directory Services. For more information on your responsibilities, please see our [shared responsibility model](#).

AWS Managed Microsoft AD supports both external and forest trusts. To walk through an example scenario showing how to create a forest trust, see [Tutorial: Create a Trust Relationship Between Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD and Your On-Premises Domain \(p. 71\)](#).

Prerequisites

Creating the trust requires only a few steps, but you must first complete several prerequisite steps prior to setting up the trust.

Connect to VPC

If you are creating a trust relationship with your on-premises directory, you must first connect your on-premises network to the VPC containing your AWS Managed Microsoft AD. The firewall for your on-premises network must have the following ports open to the CIDRs for both subnets in the VPC.

- TCP/UDP 53 - DNS
- TCP/UDP 88 - Kerberos authentication
- TCP/UDP 389 - LDAP
- TCP 445 - SMB

These are the minimum ports that are needed to be able to connect to your directory. Your specific configuration may require additional ports be open.

Configure your VPC

The VPC that contains your AWS Managed Microsoft AD must have the appropriate outbound and inbound rules.

To configure your VPC outbound rules

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#), on the **Directory Details** page, note your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory ID.
2. Open the Amazon VPC console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/vpc/>.
3. Choose **Security Groups**.
4. Search for your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory ID. In the search results, select the item with the description "AWS created security group for *directory ID* directory controllers".

Note

The selected security group is a security group that is automatically created when you initially create your directory.

5. Go to the **Outbound Rules** tab of that security group. Select **Edit**, then **Add another rule**. For the new rule, enter the following values:
 - **Type**: All Traffic
 - **Protocol**: All
 - **Destination** determines the traffic that can leave your domain controllers and where it can go in your on-premises network. Specify a single IP address or an IP address range in CIDR notation (for example, 203.0.113.5/32). You can also specify the name or ID of another security group in the same region. For more information, see [Understand Your Directory's AWS Security Group Configuration and Use \(p. 106\)](#).
6. Select **Save**.

To configure your VPC inbound rules

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#), on the **Directory Details** page, note your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory ID.
2. Open the Amazon VPC console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/vpc/>.
3. Choose **Security Groups**.
4. Search for your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory ID. In the search results, select the item with the description "AWS created security group for *directory ID* directory controllers".

Note

The selected security group is a security group that is automatically created when you initially create your directory.

5. Go to the **Inbound Rules** tab of that security group. Select **Edit**, then **Add another rule**. For the new rule, enter the following values:
 - **Type**: Custom UDP Rule
 - **Protocol**: UDP
 - **Port Range**: 445
 - For **Source**, specify a single IP address, or an IP address range in CIDR notation (for example, 203.0.113.5/32). You can also specify the name or ID of another security group in the same region. This setting determines the traffic that can reach your domain controllers from your on-premises network. For more information, see [Understand Your Directory's AWS Security Group Configuration and Use \(p. 106\)](#).

6. Select **Save**.
7. Repeat these steps, adding each of the following rules:

Type	Protocol	Port Range	Source
Custom UDP Rule	UDP	88	Specify the Source traffic used in the previous step.
Custom UDP Rule	UDP	123	Specify the Source traffic used in the previous step.
Custom UDP Rule	UDP	138	Specify the Source traffic used in the previous step.
Custom UDP Rule	UDP	389	Specify the Source traffic used in the previous step.
Custom UDP Rule	UDP	464	Specify the Source traffic used in the previous step.
Custom TCP Rule	TCP	88	Specify the Source traffic used in the previous step.
Custom TCP Rule	TCP	135	Specify the Source traffic used in the previous step.
Custom TCP Rule	TCP	445	Specify the Source traffic used in the

Type	Protocol	Port Range	Source
			previous step.
Custom TCP Rule	TCP	464	Specify the Source traffic used in the previous step.
Custom TCP Rule	TCP	636	Specify the Source traffic used in the previous step.
Custom TCP Rule	TCP	1024 - 65535	Specify the Source traffic used in the previous step.
Custom TCP Rule	TCP	3268 - 3269	Specify the Source traffic used in the previous step.
DNS (UDP)	UDP	53	Specify the Source traffic used in the previous step.
DNS (TCP)	TCP	53	Specify the Source traffic used in the previous step.
LDAP	TCP	389	Specify the Source traffic used in the previous step.

Type	Protocol	Port Range	Source
All ICMP	All	N/A	Specify the Source traffic used in the previous step.
All traffic	All	All	The current security group (The security group for your directory).

These security rules impact an internal network interface that is not exposed publicly.

Enable Kerberos Pre-authentication

Your user accounts must have Kerberos pre-authentication enabled. For more information about this setting, review [Preauthentication](#) on Microsoft TechNet.

Configure DNS Conditional Forwarders On Your On-premises domain

You must set up DNS conditional forwarders on your on-premises domain. Refer to [Assign a Conditional Forwarder for a Domain Name](#) on Microsoft TechNet for details on conditional forwarders.

To perform the following steps, you must have access to following Windows Server tools for your on-premises domain:

- AD DS and AD LDS Tools
- DNS

To configure conditional forwarders on your on-premises domain

1. First you must get some information about your AWS Managed Microsoft AD. Sign into the AWS Management Console and open the [AWS Directory Service console](https://console.aws.amazon.com/directoryservicev2/) at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/directoryservicev2/>.
2. In the navigation pane, select **Directories**.
3. Choose the directory ID of your AWS Managed Microsoft AD.
4. Take note of the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) and the DNS addresses of your directory.
5. Now, return to your on-premises domain controller. Open Server Manager.
6. On the **Tools** menu, choose **DNS**.
7. In the console tree, expand the DNS server of the domain for which you are setting up the trust.
8. In the console tree, choose **Conditional Forwarders**.
9. On the **Action** menu, choose **New conditional forwarder**.
10. In **DNS domain**, type the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of your AWS Managed Microsoft AD, which you noted earlier.
11. Choose **IP addresses of the master servers** and type the DNS addresses of your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory, which you noted earlier.

After entering the DNS addresses, you might get a "timeout" or "unable to resolve" error. You can generally ignore these errors.

12. Select **Store this conditional forwarder in Active Directory and replicate as follows: All DNS servers in this domain**. Choose **OK**.

Trust Relationship Password

If you are creating a trust relationship with an existing domain, set up the trust relationship on that domain using Windows Server Administration tools. As you do so, note the trust password that you use. You will need to use this same password when setting up the trust relationship on the AWS Managed Microsoft AD. For more information, see [Managing Trusts](#) on Microsoft TechNet.

You are now ready to create the trust relationship on your AWS Managed Microsoft AD.

Create, Verify, or Delete a Trust Relationship

To create a trust relationship with your AWS Managed Microsoft AD

1. Open the [AWS Directory Service console](#).
2. On the **Directories** page, choose your AWS Managed Microsoft AD ID.
3. On the **Directory details** page, select the **Networking & security** tab.
4. In the **Trust relationships** section, choose **Actions**, and then select **Add trust relationship**.
5. On the **Add a trust relationship** page, provide the required information, including the trust type, fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of your trusted domain, the trust password and the trust direction.
6. (Optional) If you want to allow only authorized users to access resources in your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory, you can optionally choose the **Selective authentication** check box. For general information about selective authentication, see [Security Considerations for Trusts](#) on Microsoft TechNet.
7. For **Conditional forwarder**, type the IP address of your on-premises DNS server. If you have previously created conditional forwarders, you can type the FQDN of your on-premises domain instead of a DNS IP address.
8. (Optional) Choose **Add another IP address** and type the IP address of an additional on-premises DNS server. You can repeat this step for each applicable DNS server address for a total of four addresses.
9. Choose **Add**.
10. If the DNS server or the network for your on-premises domain uses a public (non-RFC 1918) IP address space, go to the **IP routing** section, choose **Actions**, and then choose **Add route**. Type the IP address block of your DNS server or on-premises network using CIDR format, for example 203.0.113.0/24. This step is not necessary if both your DNS server and your on-premises network are using RFC 1918 IP address spaces.

Note

When using a public IP address space, make sure that you do not use any of the [AWS IP address ranges](#) as these cannot be used.

11. (Optional) We recommend that while you are on the **Add routes** page that you also select **Add routes to the security group for this directory's VPC**. This will configure the security groups as detailed above in the "Configure your VPC." These security rules impact an internal network interface that is not exposed publicly. If this option is not available, you will instead see a message indicating that you have already customized your security groups.

You must set up the trust relationship on both domains. The relationships must be complementary. For example, if you create an outgoing trust on one domain, you must create an incoming trust on the other.

If you are creating a trust relationship with an existing domain, set up the trust relationship on that domain using Windows Server Administration tools.

You can create multiple trusts between your AWS Managed Microsoft AD and various Active Directory domains. However, only one trust relationship per pair can exist at a time. For example, if you have an existing, one-way trust in the "Incoming direction" and you then want to set up another trust relationship in the "Outgoing direction," you will need to delete the existing trust relationship, and create a new "Two-way" trust.

To verify an outgoing trust relationship

1. Open the [AWS Directory Service console](#).
2. On the **Directories** page, choose your AWS Managed Microsoft AD ID.
3. On the **Directory details** page, select the **Networking & security** tab.
4. In the **Trust relationships** section, select the trust you want to verify, choose **Actions**, and then select **Verify trust relationship**.

This process verifies only the outgoing direction of a two-way trust. AWS does not support verification of an incoming trusts. For more information on how to verify a trust to or from your on-premises Active Directory, refer to [Verify a Trust](#) on Microsoft TechNet.

To delete an existing trust relationship

1. Open the [AWS Directory Service console](#).
2. On the **Directories** page, choose your AWS Managed Microsoft AD ID.
3. On the **Directory details** page, select the **Networking & security** tab.
4. In the **Trust relationships** section, select the trust you want to delete, choose **Actions**, and then select **Delete trust relationship**.
5. Choose **Delete**.

Adding IP Routes When Using Public IP Addresses

You can use AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory to take advantage of many powerful Active Directory features, including establishing trusts with other directories. However, if the DNS servers for the networks of the other directories use public (non-RFC 1918) IP addresses, you must specify those IP addresses as part of configuring the trust. Instructions for doing this can be found in [When to Create a Trust Relationship \(p. 64\)](#).

Similarly, you must also enter the IP address information when routing traffic from your AWS Managed Microsoft AD on AWS to a peer AWS VPC, if the VPC uses public IP ranges.

When you add the IP addresses as described in [When to Create a Trust Relationship \(p. 64\)](#), you have the option of selecting **Add routes to the security group for this directory's VPC**. This option should be selected unless you have previously customized your [security group](#) to allow the necessary traffic as shown below. For more information, see [Understand Your Directory's AWS Security Group Configuration and Use \(p. 106\)](#).

This option configures the security groups for your directory's VPC as follows:

Inbound rules

Type	Protocol	Port Range	Source
Custom UDP Rule	UDP	88	0.0.0.0/0

Type	Protocol	Port Range	Source
Custom UDP Rule	UDP	123	0.0.0.0/0
Custom UDP Rule	UDP	138	0.0.0.0/0
Custom UDP Rule	UDP	389	0.0.0.0/0
Custom UDP Rule	UDP	445	0.0.0.0/0
Custom UDP Rule	UDP	464	0.0.0.0/0
Custom TCP Rule	TCP	88	0.0.0.0/0
Custom TCP Rule	TCP	135	0.0.0.0/0
Custom TCP Rule	TCP	445	0.0.0.0/0
Custom TCP Rule	TCP	464	0.0.0.0/0
Custom TCP Rule	TCP	636	0.0.0.0/0
Custom TCP Rule	TCP	1024 - 65535	0.0.0.0/0
Custom TCP Rule	TCP	3268 - 3269	0.0.0.0/0
DNS (UDP)	UDP	53	0.0.0.0/0
DNS (TCP)	TCP	53	0.0.0.0/0
LDAP	TCP	389	0.0.0.0/0
All ICMP	All	N/A	0.0.0.0/0

Outbound rules

Type	Protocol	Port Range	Destination
All traffic	All	All	0.0.0.0/0

These security rules affect an internal network interface that is not exposed publicly.

Tutorial: Create a Trust Relationship Between Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD and Your On-Premises Domain

This tutorial walks you through all the steps necessary to set up a trust relationship between AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory and your on-premises Microsoft Active Directory. Although creating the trust requires only a few steps, you must first complete the following prerequisite steps.

Topics

- [Prerequisites \(p. 72\)](#)
- [Step 1: Prepare Your On-Premises Domain \(p. 73\)](#)
- [Step 2: Prepare Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 75\)](#)
- [Step 3: Create the Trust Relationship \(p. 80\)](#)

See Also

[When to Create a Trust Relationship \(p. 64\)](#)

Prerequisites

This tutorial assumes you already have the following:

- An AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory created on AWS. If you need help doing this, see [Getting Started with AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 9\)](#).
- An EC2 instance running Windows added to that AWS Managed Microsoft AD. If you need help doing this, see [Manually Join a Windows Instance \(p. 48\)](#).

Important

The admin account for your AWS Managed Microsoft AD must have administrative access to this instance.

- The following Windows Server tools installed on that instance:
 - AD DS and AD LDS Tools
 - DNS

If you need help doing this, see [Installing the Active Directory Administration Tools \(p. 60\)](#).

- An on-premises Microsoft Active Directory

You must have administrative access to this directory. The same Windows Server tools as listed above must also be available for this directory.

- An active connection between your on-premises network and the VPC containing your AWS Managed Microsoft AD. If you need help doing this, see [Amazon Virtual Private Cloud Connectivity Options](#).

Tutorial Configuration

For this tutorial, we've already created a AWS Managed Microsoft AD and an on-premises domain. The on-premises network is connected to the AWS Managed Microsoft AD's VPC. Following are the properties of the two directories:

AWS Managed Microsoft AD running on AWS

- Domain name (FQDN): MyManagedAD.example.com
- NetBIOS name: MyManagedAD
- DNS Addresses: 10.0.10.246, 10.0.20.121
- VPC CIDR: 10.0.0.0/16

The AWS Managed Microsoft AD resides in VPC ID: vpc-12345678.

On-premises domain

- Domain name (FQDN): corp.example.com
- NetBIOS name: CORP
- DNS Addresses: 172.16.10.153
- On-premises CIDR: 172.16.0.0/16

Next Step

[Step 1: Prepare Your On-Premises Domain \(p. 73\)](#)

Step 1: Prepare Your On-Premises Domain

First you need to complete several prerequisite steps on your on-premises domain.

Configure Your On-Premises Firewall

You must configure your on-premises firewall so that the following ports are open to the CIDRs for all subnets used by the VPC that contains your AWS Managed Microsoft AD. In this tutorial, we allow both incoming and outgoing traffic from 10.0.0.0/16 (the CIDR block of our AWS Managed Microsoft AD's VPC) on the following ports:

- TCP/UDP 53 - DNS
- TCP/UDP 88 - Kerberos authentication
- TCP/UDP 389 - LDAP
- TCP 445 - SMB

Note

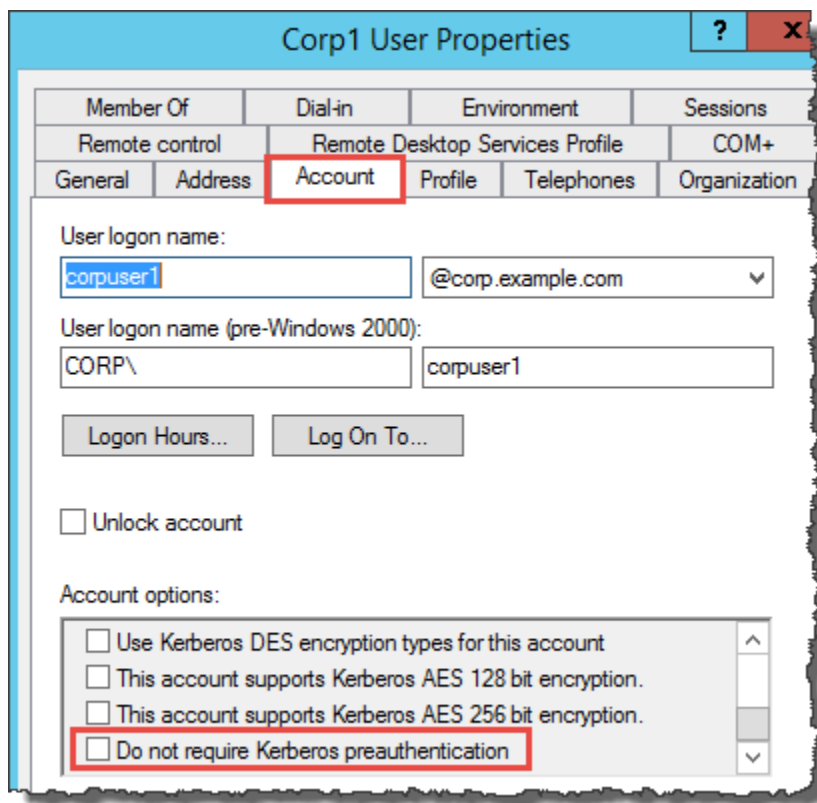
These are the minimum ports that are needed to connect the VPC to the on-premises directory. Your specific configuration may require additional ports be open.

Ensure That Kerberos Pre-authentication Is Enabled

User accounts in both directories must have Kerberos preauthentication enabled. This is the default, but let's check the properties of any random user to make sure nothing has changed.

To view user Kerberos settings

1. On your on-premises domain controller, open Server Manager.
2. On the **Tools** menu, choose **Active Directory Users and Computers**.
3. Choose the **Users** folder and open the context (right-click) menu. Select any random user account listed in the right pane. Choose **Properties**.
4. Choose the **Account** tab. In the **Account options** list, scroll down and ensure that **Do not require Kerberos preauthentication** is *not* checked.



Configure DNS Conditional Forwarders for Your On-premises Domain

You must set up DNS conditional forwarders on each domain. Before doing this on your on-premises domain, you will first get some information about your AWS Managed Microsoft AD.

To configure conditional forwarders on your on-premises domain

1. Sign into the AWS Management Console and open the [AWS Directory Service console](https://console.aws.amazon.com/directoryservicev2/) at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/directoryservicev2/>.
2. In the navigation pane, select **Directories**.
3. Choose the directory ID of your AWS Managed Microsoft AD.
4. On the **Details** page, take note of the values in **Directory name** and the **DNS address** of your directory.
5. Now, return to your on-premises domain controller. Open Server Manager.
6. On the **Tools** menu, choose **DNS**.
7. In the console tree, expand the DNS server of the domain for which you are setting up the trust. Our server is WIN-5V70CN7VJ0.corp.example.com.
8. In the console tree, choose **Conditional Forwarders**.
9. On the **Action** menu, choose **New conditional forwarder**.
10. In **DNS domain**, type the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of your AWS Managed Microsoft AD, which you noted earlier. In this example, the FQDN is MyManagedAD.example.com.
11. Choose **IP addresses of the master servers** and type the DNS addresses of your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory, which you noted earlier. In this example those are: 10.0.10.246, 10.0.20.121

After entering the DNS addresses, you might get a "timeout" or "unable to resolve" error. You can generally ignore these errors.

New Conditional Forwarder

DNS Domain:
MyManagedAD.example.com

IP addresses of the master servers:

IP Address	Server FQDN	Validated
<Click here to add a...>		
10.0.10.246	<Unable to resolve>	A timeout occurred duri...
10.0.20.121	<Unable to resolve>	A timeout occurred duri...

☒ Store this conditional forwarder in Active Directory, and replicate it as follows:
All DNS servers in this domain

This will not replicate to DNS Servers that are pre-Windows Server 2003 Domain Controllers

Number of seconds before forward queries time out: 5

The server FQDN will not be available if the appropriate reverse lookup zones and entries are not configured.

OK Cancel

12. Select **Store this conditional forwarder in Active Directory, and replicate it as follows.**
13. Select **All DNS servers in this domain**, and then choose **OK**.

Next Step

[Step 2: Prepare Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 75\)](#)

Step 2: Prepare Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD

Now let's get your AWS Managed Microsoft AD ready for the trust relationship. Many of the following steps are almost identical to what you just completed for your on-premises domain. This time, however, you are working with your AWS Managed Microsoft AD.

Configure Your VPC Subnets and Security Groups

You must allow traffic from your on-premises network to the VPC containing your AWS Managed Microsoft AD. To do this, you will need to make sure that the ACLs associated with the subnets used to deploy your AWS Managed Microsoft AD and the security group rules configured on your domain controllers, both allow the requisite traffic to support trusts.

Port requirements vary based on the version of Windows Server used by your domain controllers and the services or applications that will be leveraging the trust. For the purposes of this tutorial, you will need to open the following ports:

Inbound

- TCP/UDP 53 - DNS
- TCP/UDP 88 - Kerberos authentication
- UDP 123 - NTP
- TCP 135 - RPC
- UDP 137-138 - Netlogon
- TCP 139 - Netlogon
- TCP/UDP 389 - LDAP
- TCP/UDP 445 - SMB
- TCP/UDP 464 - Kerberos authentication
- TCP 636 - LDAPS (LDAP over TLS/SSL)
- TCP 873 - Rsync
- TCP 3268-3269 - Global Catalog
- TCP/UDP 1024-65535 - Ephemeral ports for RPC
- ICMP All

Outbound

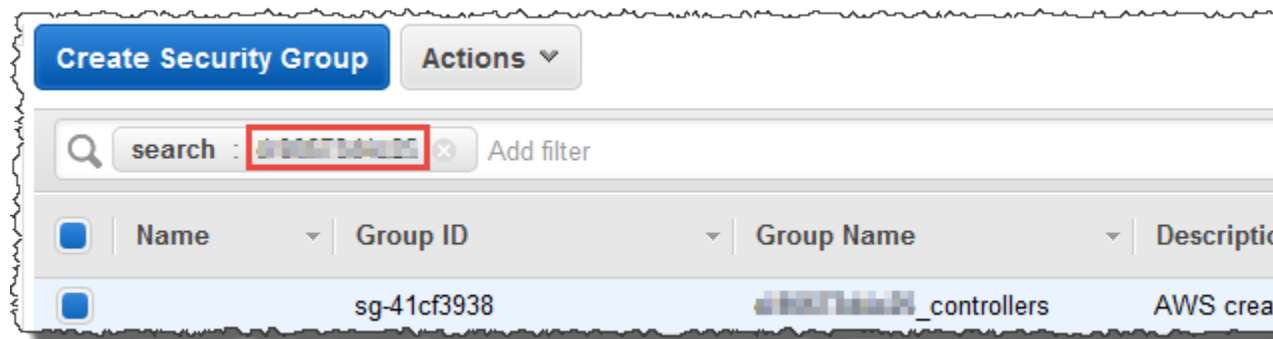
- ALL

Note

These are the minimum ports that are needed to be able to connect the VPC and on-premises directory. Your specific configuration may require additional ports be open.

To configure your AWS Managed Microsoft AD domain controller outbound and inbound rules

1. Return to the [AWS Directory Service console](#). In the list of directories, take note the directory ID for your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory.
2. Open the Amazon VPC console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/vpc/>.
3. In the navigation pane, choose **Security Groups**.
4. Use the search box to search for your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory ID. In the search results, select the item with the description **AWS created security group for <yourdirectoryID> directory controllers**.



5. Go to the **Outbound Rules** tab for that security group. Choose **Edit**, and then **Add another rule**. For the new rule, enter the following values:
 - **Type:** ALL Traffic
 - **Protocol:** ALL

- **Destination** determines the traffic that can leave your domain controllers and where it can go. Specify a single IP address or an IP address range in CIDR notation (for example, 203.0.113.5/32). You can also specify the name or ID of another security group in the same region. For more information, see [Understand Your Directory's AWS Security Group Configuration and Use](#) (p. 106).

6. Select **Save**.

The screenshot shows the AWS Security Groups console with the 'Outbound Rules' tab selected. A red box highlights the 'Save' button. Below the button, a table displays the rule configuration:

Type	Protocol	Port Range	Destination
ALL Traffic	ALL	ALL	0.0.0.0/0

Below the table is an 'Add another rule' button.

7. Go to the **Inbound Rules** tab for that same security group. Choose **Edit**, and then **Add another rule**. For the new rule, enter the following values:

- **Type:** Custom UDP Rule
- **Protocol:** UDP
- **Port Range:** 445
- For **Source**, specify a single IP address, or an IP address range in CIDR notation (for example, 203.0.113.5/32). You can also specify the name or ID of another security group in the same region. This setting determines the traffic that can reach your domain controllers. For more information, see [Understand Your Directory's AWS Security Group Configuration and Use](#) (p. 106).

8. Select **Save**.

9. Repeat steps 7 and 8, adding each of the following rules:

Type	Protocol	Port Range	Source
Custom UDP Rule	UDP	88	Specify the Source traffic used in the previous step.
Custom UDP Rule	UDP	123	Specify the Source traffic used in the previous step.
Custom UDP Rule	UDP	138	Specify the Source traffic used in the

Type	Protocol	Port Range	Source
			previous step.
Custom UDP Rule	UDP	389	Specify the Source traffic used in the previous step.
Custom UDP Rule	UDP	464	Specify the Source traffic used in the previous step.
Custom TCP Rule	TCP	88	Specify the Source traffic used in the previous step.
Custom TCP Rule	TCP	135	Specify the Source traffic used in the previous step.
Custom TCP Rule	TCP	445	Specify the Source traffic used in the previous step.
Custom TCP Rule	TCP	464	Specify the Source traffic used in the previous step.
Custom TCP Rule	TCP	636	Specify the Source traffic used in the previous step.

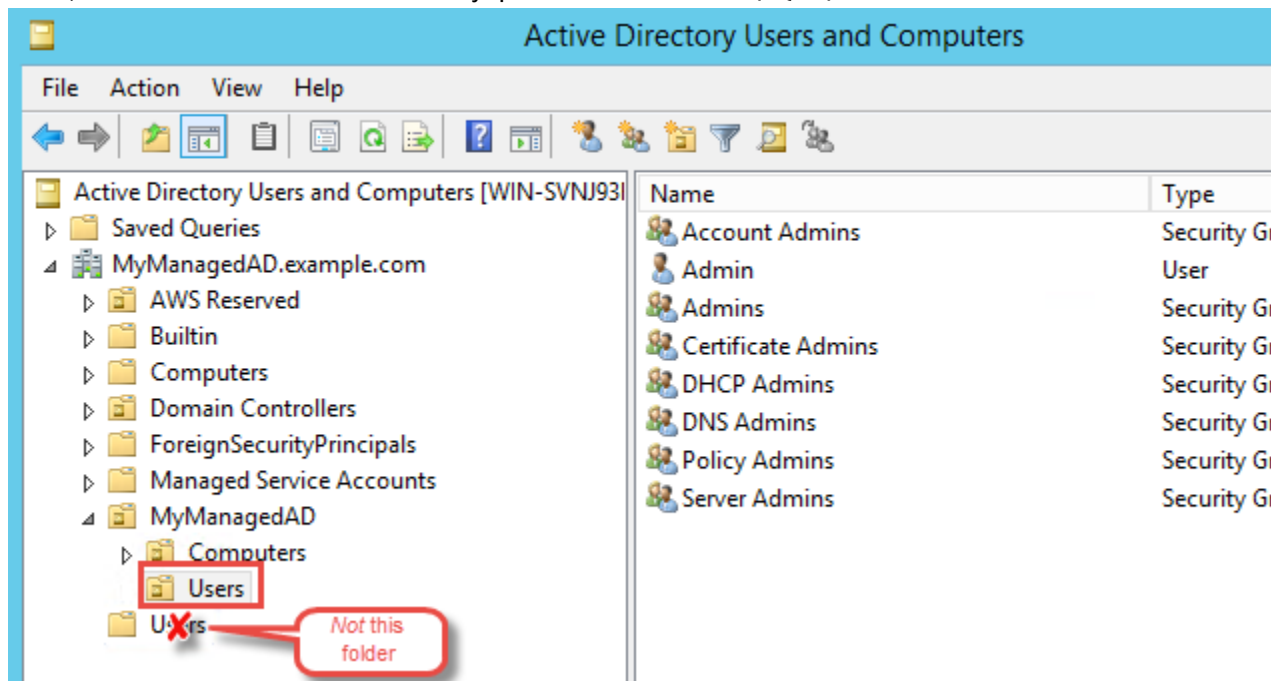
Type	Protocol	Port Range	Source
Custom TCP Rule	TCP	1024 - 65535	Specify the Source traffic used in the previous step.
Custom TCP Rule	TCP	3268 - 3269	Specify the Source traffic used in the previous step.
DNS (UDP)	UDP	53	Specify the Source traffic used in the previous step.
DNS (TCP)	TCP	53	Specify the Source traffic used in the previous step.
LDAP	TCP	389	Specify the Source traffic used in the previous step.
All ICMP	All	N/A	Specify the Source traffic used in the previous step.
All traffic	All	All	The current security group (The security group for your directory).

Ensure That Kerberos Pre-authentication Is Enabled

Now you want to confirm that users in your AWS Managed Microsoft AD also have Kerberos pre-authentication enabled. This is the same process you completed for your on-premises directory. This is the default, but let's check to make sure nothing has changed.

To view user Kerberos settings

1. Log in to an instance that is a member of your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory using either the [Admin Account \(p. 14\)](#) for the domain or an account that has been delegated permissions to manage users in the domain.
2. If they are not already installed, install the Active Directory Users and Computers tool and the DNS tool. Learn how to install these tools in [Installing the Active Directory Administration Tools \(p. 60\)](#).
3. Open Server Manager. On the **Tools** menu, choose **Active Directory Users and Computers**.
4. Choose the **Users** folder in your domain. Note that this is the **Users** folder under your NetBIOS name, not the **Users** folder under the fully qualified domain name (FQDN).



5. In the list of users, right-click on a user, and then choose **Properties**.
6. Choose the **Account** tab. In the **Account options** list, ensure that **Do not require Kerberos preauthentication** is *not* checked.

Next Step

[Step 3: Create the Trust Relationship \(p. 80\)](#)

Step 3: Create the Trust Relationship

Now that the preparation work is complete, the final steps are to create the trusts. First you create the trust on your on-premises domain, and then finally on your AWS Managed Microsoft AD. If you have any issues during the trust creation process, see [Trust Creation Status Reasons \(p. 130\)](#) for assistance.

Configure the Trust in Your On-Premises Active Directory

In this tutorial, you configure a two-way forest trust. However, if you create a one-way forest trust, be aware that the trust directions on each of your domains must be complementary. For example, if you create a one-way, outgoing trust on your on-premises domain, you need to create a one-way, incoming trust on your AWS Managed Microsoft AD.

Note

AWS Managed Microsoft AD also supports external trusts. However, for the purposes of this tutorial, you will create a two-way forest trust.

To configure the trust in your on-premises AD

1. Open Server Manager and on the **Tools** menu, choose **Active Directory Domains and Trusts**.
2. Open the context (right-click) menu of your domain and choose **Properties**.
3. Choose the **Trusts** tab and choose **New trust**. Type the name of your AWS Managed Microsoft AD and choose **Next**.
4. Choose **Forest trust**. Choose **Next**.
5. Choose **Two-way**. Choose **Next**.
6. Choose **This domain only**. Choose **Next**.
7. Choose **Forest-wide authentication**. Choose **Next**.
8. Type a **Trust password**. Make sure to remember this password as you will need it when setting up the trust for your AWS Managed Microsoft AD.
9. In the next dialog box, confirm your settings and choose **Next**. Confirm that the trust was created successfully and again choose **Next**.
10. Choose **No, do not confirm the outgoing trust**. Choose **Next**.
11. Choose **No, do not confirm the incoming trust**. Choose **Next**.

Configure the Trust in Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Directory

Finally, you configure the forest trust relationship with your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory. Because you created a two-way forest trust on the on-premises domain, you also create a two-way trust using your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory.

To configure the trust in your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory

1. Return to the [AWS Directory Service console](#).
2. On the **Directories** page, choose your AWS Managed Microsoft AD ID.
3. On the **Directory details** page, select the **Networking & security** tab.
4. In the **Trust relationships** section, choose **Actions**, and then select **Add trust relationship**.
5. On the **Add a trust relationship** page, Type the FQDN of your on-premises domain (in this tutorial **corp.example.com**). Type the same trust password that you used when creating the trust on your on-premises domain. Specify the direction. In this case we choose **Two-way**.
6. In the **Conditional forwarder** field, enter the IP address of your on-premises DNS server. In this example, enter 172.16.10.153.
7. (Optional) Choose **Add another IP address** and enter a second IP address for your on-premises DNS server. You can specify up to a total of four DNS servers.
8. Choose **Add**.

Congratulations. You now have a trust relationship between your on-premises domain (corp.example.com) and your AWS Managed Microsoft AD (MyManagedAD.example.com). Only one relationship can be set up between these two domains. If for example, you want to change the trust direction to one-way, you would first need to delete this existing trust relationship and create a new one.

For more information, including instructions about verifying or deleting trusts, see [When to Create a Trust Relationship \(p. 64\)](#).

Extend Your Schema

AWS Managed Microsoft AD uses schemas to organize and enforce how directory data is stored. The process of adding definitions to the schema is referred to as “extending the schema.” Schema extensions make it possible for you to modify the schema of your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory using a valid LDAP Data Interchange Format (LDIF) file. For more information about AD schemas and how to extend your schema, see the topics listed below.

Topics

- [When to Extend Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Schema \(p. 82\)](#)
- [Tutorial: Extending Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Schema \(p. 82\)](#)

When to Extend Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Schema

You can extend your AWS Managed Microsoft AD schema by adding new object classes and attributes. For example, you might do this if you have an application that requires changes to your schema in order to support single sign-on capabilities.

You can also use schema extensions to enable support for applications that rely on specific Active Directory object classes and attributes. This can be especially useful in the case where you need to migrate corporate applications that are dependent on AWS Managed Microsoft AD, to the AWS cloud.

Each attribute or class that is added to an existing Active Directory schema must be defined with a unique ID. That way when companies add extensions to the schema, they can be guaranteed to be unique and not to conflict with each other. These IDs are referred to as AD Object Identifiers (OIDs) and are stored in AWS Managed Microsoft AD.

To get started, see [Tutorial: Extending Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Schema \(p. 82\)](#).

Related Topics

- [Extend Your Schema \(p. 82\)](#)
- [Schema Elements \(p. 15\)](#)

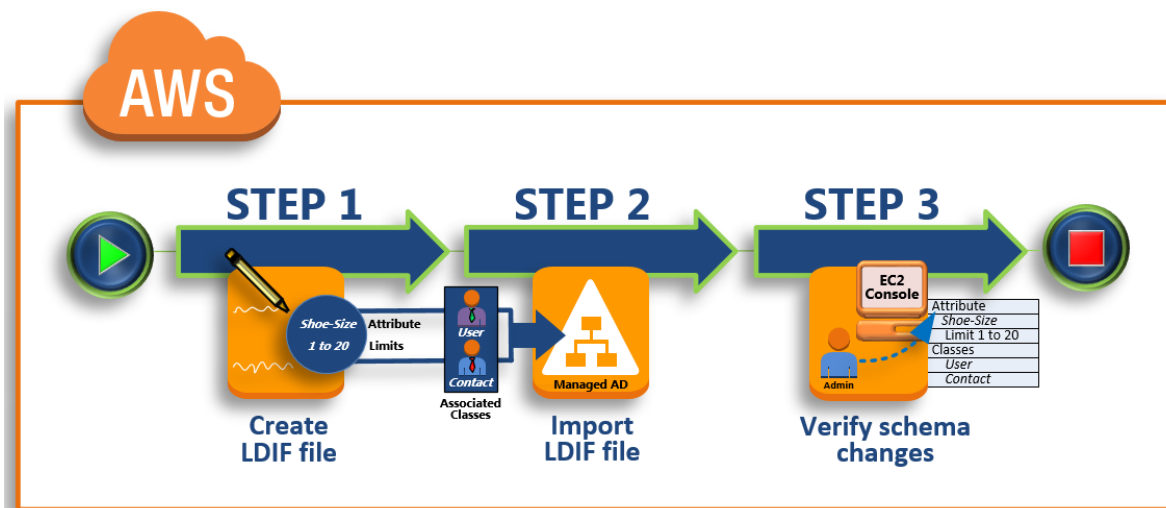
Tutorial: Extending Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Schema

In this tutorial, you will learn how to extend the schema for your AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory directory, also known as AWS Managed Microsoft AD, by adding unique *attributes* and *classes* that meet your specific requirements. AWS Managed Microsoft AD schema extensions can only be uploaded and applied using a valid LDIF (Lightweight Directory Interchange Format) script file.

Attributes (*attributeSchema*) define the fields in the database while classes (*classSchema*) define the tables in the database. For example, all of the user objects in Active Directory are defined by the schema class *User* while the individual properties of a user, such as email address or phone number, are each defined by an attribute.

If you wanted to add a new property, such as Shoe-Size, you would define a new attribute, which would be of type *integer*. You could also define lower and upper limits like 1 to 20. Once the Shoe-Size *attributeSchema* object has been created, you would then alter the *User* *classSchema* object to contain that attribute. Attributes can be linked to multiple classes. Shoe-Size could also be added to the *Contact* class for example. For more information about Active Directory schemas, see [When to Extend Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Schema \(p. 82\)](#).

This workflow has three basic steps.



Step 1: Create Your LDIF File (p. 83)

First, you create an LDIF file and define the new attributes and any classes that the attributes should be added to. You use this file for the next phase of the workflow.

Step 2: Import Your LDIF File (p. 84)

In this step, you use the AWS Directory Service console to import the LDIF file to your Microsoft AD environment.

Step 3: Verify If The Schema Extension Was Successful (p. 85)

Finally, as an administrator, you use an EC2 instance to verify that the new extensions appear in the Active Directory Schema Snap-in.

Step 1: Create Your LDIF File

An LDIF file is a standard plain text data interchange format for representing [LDAP](#) (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol) directory content and update requests. LDIF conveys directory content as a set of records, one record for each object (or entry). It also represents update requests, such as Add, Modify, Delete, and Rename, as a set of records, one record for each update request.

The AWS Directory Service imports your LDIF file with the schema changes by running the `ldifde.exe` application on your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory. Therefore, you'll find it helpful to understand the LDIF script syntax. For more information, see [LDIF Scripts](#).

Several third-party LDIF tools can extract, clean-up, and update your schema updates. Regardless of which tool you use, it is important to understand that all identifiers used in your LDIF file must be unique.

We highly recommend that you review the following concepts and tips prior to creating your LDIF file.

- **Schema elements** – Learn about schema elements such as attributes, classes, object IDs, and linked attributes. For more information, see [Schema Elements \(p. 15\)](#).
- **Sequence of items** – Make sure that the order in which the items in your LDIF file are laid out follow the [Directory Information Tree \(DIT\)](#) from the top down. The general rules for sequencing in an LDIF file include the following:
 - Separate items with a blank line.
 - List child items after their parent items.

- Ensure that items such as attributes or object classes exist in the schema. If they are not present, you must add them to the schema before they can be used. For example, before you can assign an attribute to a class, the attribute must be created.
- **Format of the DN** – For each new instruction in the LDIF file, define the distinguished name (DN) as the first line of the instruction. The DN identifies an Active Directory object within the Active Directory object's tree and must contain the domain components for your directory. For example, the domain components for the directory in this tutorial are `DC=example,DC=com`.

The DN also must contain the common name (CN) of the Active Directory object. The first CN entry is the attribute or class name. Next, you must use `CN=Schema,CN=Configuration`. This CN ensures that you are able to extend the Active Directory schema. As mentioned before, you cannot add or modify Active Directory objects' content. The general format for a DN follows.

```
dn: CN=[attribute or class name],CN=Schema,CN=Configuration,DC=[domain_name]
```

For this tutorial, the DN for the new Shoe-Size attribute would look like:

```
dn: CN=Shoe-Size,CN=Schema,CN=Configuration,DC=example,DC=com
```

- **Warnings** – Review the warnings below before you extend your schema.
 - Before you extend your Active Directory schema, it is important to review Microsoft's warnings on the impact of this operation. For more information, see [What You Must Know Before Extending the Schema](#).
 - You cannot delete a schema attribute or class. Therefore, if you make a mistake and don't want to restore from backup, you can only disable the object. For more information, see [Disabling Existing Classes and Attributes](#).

To learn more about how LDIF files are constructed and see a sample LDIF file that can be used for testing AWS Managed Microsoft AD schema extensions, see the article [How to Extend your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory Schema](#) on the AWS Security Blog.

Next Step

[Step 2: Import Your LDIF File \(p. 84\)](#)

Step 2: Import Your LDIF File

You can extend your schema by importing an LDIF file from either the AWS Directory Service console or by using the API. For more information about how to do this with the schema extension APIs, see the [AWS Directory Service API Reference](#). At this time, AWS does not support external applications, such as Microsoft Exchange, to perform schema updates directly.

Important

When you make an update to your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory schema, the operation is not reversible. In other words, once you create a new class or attribute, Active Directory doesn't allow you to remove it. However, you can disable it.

If you must delete the schema changes, one option is to restore the directory from a previous snapshot. Restoring a snapshot rolls both the schema and the directory data back to a previous point, not just the schema.

Before the update process begins, AWS Managed Microsoft AD takes a snapshot to preserve the current state of your directory.

To import your LDIF file

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, select **Directories**.

2. On the **Directories** page, choose your directory ID.
3. On the **Directory details** page, select the **Maintenance** tab.
4. In the **Schema extensions** section, choose **Actions**, and then select **Upload and update schema**.
5. In the dialog box, click **Browse**, select a valid LDIF file, type a description, and then choose **Update Schema**.

Important

Extending the schema is a critical operation. Don't apply any schema update in production environment without first testing it with your application in a development or test environment.

How is the LDIF File Applied

After your LDIF file has been uploaded, AWS Managed Microsoft AD takes steps to protect your directory against errors as it applies the changes in the following order.

1. **Validates the LDIF file.** Since LDIF scripts can manipulate any object in the domain, AWS Managed Microsoft AD runs checks right after you upload to help ensure that the import operation will not fail. These include checks to ensure the following:
 - The objects to be updated are only held in the schema container
 - The DC (domain controllers) part matches the name of the domain where the LDIF script is running
2. **Takes a snapshot of your directory.** You can use the snapshot to restore your directory in case you encounter any problems with your application after updating the schema.
3. **Applies the changes to a single DC.** AWS Managed Microsoft AD isolates one of your DCs and applies the updates in the LDIF file to the isolated DC. It then selects one of your DCs to be the schema master, removes that DC from directory replication, and applies your LDIF file using `Ldifde.exe`.
4. **Replication occurs to all DCs.** AWS Managed Microsoft AD adds the isolated DC back in to replication to complete the update. While this is all happening, your directory continues to provide the Active Directory service to your applications without disruption.

Next Step

[Step 3: Verify If The Schema Extension Was Successful \(p. 85\)](#)

Step 3: Verify If The Schema Extension Was Successful

After you have finished the import process, it is important to verify that schema updates were applied to your directory. This is especially critical before you migrate or update any application that relies on the schema update. You can do this using a variety of different LDAP tools or by writing a test tool that issues the appropriate LDAP commands.

This procedure uses the Active Directory Schema Snap-in and/or PowerShell to verify that the schema updates were applied. You must run these tools from a computer that is domain joined to your AWS Managed Microsoft AD. This can be a Windows server running in your on-premises network with access to your virtual private cloud (VPC) or through a virtual private network (VPN) connection. You can also run these tools on an Amazon EC2 Windows instance (see [How to launch a new EC2 instance with Seamless Domain Join](#)).

To verify using the Active Directory Schema Snap-in

1. Install the Active Directory Schema Snap-In using the instructions on the [TechNet](#) website.
2. Open the Microsoft Management Console (MMC) and expand the **AD Schema** tree for your directory.
3. Navigate through the **Classes** and **Attributes** folders until you find the schema changes that you made earlier.

To verify using PowerShell

1. Open a PowerShell window.
2. Use the `Get-ADObject` cmdlet as shown below to verify the schema change. For example:

```
get-adobject -Identity 'CN=Shoe-  
Size,CN=Schema,CN=Configuration,DC=example,DC=com' -Properties *
```

Optional Step

(Optional) [Add a value to the new attribute \(p. 86\)](#)

(Optional) Add a value to the new attribute

Use this optional step when you have created a new attribute and want to add a new value to the attribute in your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory.

To add a value to an attribute

1. Open the Windows PowerShell command line utility and set the new attribute with the following command. In this example, we will add a new `EC2InstanceID` value to the attribute for a specific computer.

```
PS C:\> set-adcomputer -Identity computer name -add @{example-EC2InstanceID  
= 'EC2 instance ID' }
```

2. You can validate if the `EC2InstanceID` value was added to the computer object by running the following command:

```
PS C:\> get-adcomputer -Identity computer name -Property example-  
EC2InstanceID
```

Related Resources

The following resource links are located on the Microsoft website and provide related information.

- [Extending the Schema \(Windows\)](#)
- [Active Directory Schema \(Windows\)](#)
- [Active Directory Schema](#)
- [Windows Administration: Extending the Active Directory Schema](#)
- [Restrictions on Schema Extension \(Windows\)](#)
- [Ldifde](#)

Maintain Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Directory

This section describes how to maintain common administrative tasks for your AWS Managed Microsoft AD environment.

Topics

- [Add Alternate UPN Suffixes \(p. 87\)](#)
- [Delete Your Directory \(p. 87\)](#)
- [Rename Your Directory's Site Name \(p. 88\)](#)
- [Snapshot or Restore Your Directory \(p. 88\)](#)
- [View Directory Information \(p. 90\)](#)

Add Alternate UPN Suffixes

You can simplify the management of Active Directory (AD) login names and improve the user login experience by adding alternate user principal name (UPN) suffixes to your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory. To do that, you must be logged on with the **Admin** account or with an account that is a member of the **AWS Delegated User Principal Name Suffix Administrators** group. For more information about this group, see [What Gets Created](#) (p. 11).

To add alternate UPN suffixes

1. Open the Amazon EC2 console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/ec2/>.
2. Locate an Amazon EC2 instance that is joined to your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory. Select the instance and then choose **Connect**.
3. In the **Server Manager** window, choose **Tools**. Then choose **Active Directory Domains and Trusts**.
4. In the left pane, right-click **Active Directory Domains and Trusts** and then choose **Properties**.
5. In the **UPN Suffixes** tab, type an alternative UPN suffix (such as **sales.example.com**). Choose **Add** and then choose **Apply**.
6. If you need to add additional alternative UPN suffixes, repeat step 5 until you have the UPN suffixes you require.

Delete Your Directory

When a Simple AD or AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory directory is deleted, all of the directory data and snapshots are deleted and cannot be recovered. After the directory is deleted, all instances that are joined to the directory remain intact. You cannot, however, use your directory credentials to log in to these instances. You need to log in to these instances with a user account that is local to the instance.

When an AD Connector directory is deleted, your on-premises directory remains intact. All instances that are joined to the directory also remain intact and remain joined to your on-premises directory. You can still use your directory credentials to log in to these instances.

To delete a directory

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, select **Directories**.
2. Ensure that no AWS applications are enabled for the directory.
 - a. On the **Directories** page, choose your directory ID.
 - b. On the **Directory details** page, select the **Application management** tab. In the **AWS apps & services** section, you see which AWS applications are enabled for your directory.
 - To disable Amazon WorkSpaces, you must deregister the service from the directory in the Amazon WorkSpaces console. For more information, see [Deregistering From a Directory](#) in the *Amazon WorkSpaces Administration Guide*.
 - To disable Amazon WorkSpaces Application Manager, you must remove all application assignments in the Amazon WAM console. For more information, see [Removing All Application Assignments](#) in the *Amazon WAM Administration Guide*.
 - To disable Amazon WorkDocs, you must delete the Amazon WorkDocs site in the Amazon WorkDocs console. For more information, see [Delete a Site](#) in the *Amazon WorkDocs Administration Guide*.
 - To disable Amazon WorkMail, you must remove the Amazon WorkMail organization in the Amazon WorkMail console. For more information, see [Remove an Organization](#) in the *Amazon WorkMail Administrator Guide*.

- Disable AWS Management Console access.
- To disable Amazon Relational Database Service, you must remove the Amazon RDS instance from the domain. For more information, see [Managing a DB Instance in a Domain](#) in the *Amazon RDS User Guide*.
- To disable Amazon QuickSight, you must unsubscribe from Amazon QuickSight. For more information, see [Closing Your Amazon QuickSight Account](#) in the *Amazon QuickSight User Guide*.
- To disable Amazon Connect, you must delete the Amazon Connect Instance. For more information, see [Deleting an Amazon Connect Instance](#) in the *Amazon Connect Administration Guide*.

Note

If you are using AWS Single Sign-On and have previously connected it to the AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory you plan to delete, you must first disconnect the directory from AWS SSO before you can delete it. For more information, see [Disconnect a Directory](#) in the *AWS SSO User Guide*.

3. In the navigation pane, choose **Directories**.
4. Select only the directory to be deleted and click **Delete**. It takes several minutes for the directory to be deleted. When the directory has been deleted, it is removed from your directory list.

Rename Your Directory's Site Name

You can rename your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory's default site name so that it matches with your existing Microsoft Active Directory (AD) site names. This makes it faster for AWS Managed Microsoft AD to find and authenticate your existing AD users in your on-premises directory. The result is a better experience when users login to AWS resources such as [Amazon EC2](#) and [Amazon RDS for SQL Server](#) instances that you have joined to your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory.

To do that, you must be logged in with the **Admin** account or with an account that is a member of the **AWS Delegated Sites and Services Administrators** group. For more information about this group, see [What Gets Created \(p. 11\)](#).

To rename the AWS Managed Microsoft AD site name

1. Open the Amazon EC2 console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/ec2/>.
2. Locate an Amazon EC2 instance that is joined to your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory. Select the instance and then choose **Connect**.
3. In the **Server Manager** window, choose **Tools**. Then choose **Active Directory Sites and Services**.
4. In the left pane, expand the **Sites** folder, right-click the site name (default is **Default-Site-Name**), and then choose **Rename**.
5. Type the new site name, and then choose **Enter**.

Snapshot or Restore Your Directory

AWS Directory Service provides the ability to take manual snapshots of data for a Simple AD or AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory directory. These snapshots can be used to perform a point-in-time restore for your directory.

Note

You cannot take snapshots of AD Connector directories.

Topics

- [Creating a Snapshot of Your Directory](#) (p. 89)
- [Restoring Your Directory from a Snapshot](#) (p. 89)
- [Deleting a Snapshot](#) (p. 90)

Creating a Snapshot of Your Directory

A snapshot can be used to restore your directory to what it was at the point in time that the snapshot was taken. To create a manual snapshot of your directory, perform the following steps.

Note

You are limited to 5 manual snapshots for each directory. If you have already reached this limit, you must delete one of your existing manual snapshots before you can create another.

To create a manual snapshot

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, select **Directories**.
2. On the **Directories** page, choose your directory ID.
3. On the **Directory details** page, select the **Maintenance** tab.
4. In the **Snapshots** section, choose **Actions**, and then select **Create snapshot**.
5. In the **Create directory snapshot** dialog box, provide a name for the snapshot, if desired. When ready, choose **Create**.

Depending on the size of your directory, it may take several minutes to create the snapshot. When the snapshot is ready, the **Status** value changes to **Completed**.

Restoring Your Directory from a Snapshot

Restoring a directory from a snapshot is equivalent to moving the directory back in time. Directory snapshots are unique to the directory they were created from. A snapshot can only be restored to the directory from which it was created.

Warning

We recommend that you contact the [AWS Support Center](#) before any snapshot restore; we may be able to help you avoid the need to do a snapshot restore. Any restore from snapshot can result in data loss as they are a point in time. It is important you understand that all of the DCs and DNS servers associated with the directory will be offline until the restore operation has been completed.

To restore your directory from a snapshot, perform the following steps.

To restore a directory from a snapshot

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, select **Directories**.
2. On the **Directories** page, choose your directory ID.
3. On the **Directory details** page, select the **Maintenance** tab.
4. In the **Snapshots** section, select a snapshot in the list, choose **Actions**, and then select **Restore snapshot**.
5. Review the information in the **Restore directory snapshot** dialog box, and choose **Restore**.

For a Simple AD directory, it may take several minutes for the directory to be restored. For a AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory, it can take from two to three hours. When it has been successfully restored, the **Status** value of the directory changes to **Active**. Any changes made to the directory after the snapshot date are overwritten.

Deleting a Snapshot

To delete a snapshot

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, select **Directories**.
2. On the **Directories** page, choose your directory ID.
3. On the **Directory details** page, select the **Maintenance** tab.
4. In the **Snapshots** section, choose **Actions**, and then select **Delete snapshot**.
5. Verify that you want to delete the snapshot, and then choose **Delete**.

View Directory Information

You can view detailed information about a directory.

To view detailed directory information

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, select **Directories**.
2. Click the directory ID link for your directory. Information about the directory is displayed in the **Directory details** page.

For more information about the **Status** field, see [Understanding Your Directory Status \(p. 32\)](#).

Grant Users and Groups Access to AWS Resources

AWS Directory Service provides the ability to give your directory users and groups access to AWS services and resources, such as access to the Amazon EC2 console. Similar to granting IAM users access to manage directories as described in [Identity-Based Policies \(IAM Policies\) \(p. 208\)](#), in order for users in your directory to have access to other AWS resources, such as Amazon EC2 you must assign IAM roles and policies to those users and groups. For more information, see [IAM Roles](#) in the *IAM User Guide*.

For information about how to grant users access to the AWS Management Console, see [Enable Access to the AWS Management Console with AD Credentials \(p. 102\)](#).

Topics

- [Creating a New Role \(p. 90\)](#)
- [Editing the Trust Relationship for an Existing Role \(p. 91\)](#)
- [Assigning Users or Groups to an Existing Role \(p. 92\)](#)
- [Viewing Users and Groups Assigned to a Role \(p. 92\)](#)
- [Removing a User or Group from a Role \(p. 93\)](#)
- [Using AWS Managed Policies with AWS Directory Service \(p. 93\)](#)

Creating a New Role

If you need to create a new IAM role for use with AWS Directory Service, you must create it using the IAM console. Once the role has been created, you must then set up a trust relationship with that role before you can see that role in the AWS Directory Service console. For more information, see [Editing the Trust Relationship for an Existing Role \(p. 91\)](#).

Note

The user performing this task must have permission to perform the following IAM actions. For more information, see [Identity-Based Policies \(IAM Policies\) \(p. 208\)](#).

- iam:PassRole
- iam:GetRole
- iam:CreateRole
- iam:PutRolePolicy

To create a new role in the IAM console

1. In the navigation pane of the IAM console, choose **Roles**. For more information, see [Creating a Role \(AWS Management Console\)](#) in the *IAM User Guide*.
2. Choose **Create role**.
3. Under **Choose the service that will use this role**, choose **Directory Service**, and then choose **Next**.
4. Select the check box next to the policy (for example, **AmazonEC2FullAccess**) that you want to apply to your directory users, and then choose **Next**.
5. If necessary, add a tag to the role, and then choose **Next**.
6. Provide a **Role name** and optional **Description**, and then choose **Create role**.

Example: Create a role to enable AWS Management Console access

The following checklist provides an example of the tasks you must complete to create a new role that will give specific directory users access to the Amazon EC2 console.

1. Create a role with the IAM console using the procedure above. When prompted for a policy, choose **AmazonEC2FullAccess**.
2. Use the steps in [Editing the Trust Relationship for an Existing Role \(p. 91\)](#) to edit the role you just created, and then add the required trust relationship information to the policy document. This step is necessary for the role to be visible immediately after you enable access to the AWS Management Console in the next step.
3. Follow the steps in [Enable Access to the AWS Management Console with AD Credentials \(p. 102\)](#) to configure general access to the AWS Management Console.
4. Follow the steps in [Assigning Users or Groups to an Existing Role \(p. 92\)](#) to add the users who need full access to EC2 resources to the new role.

Editing the Trust Relationship for an Existing Role

You can assign your existing IAM roles to your AWS Directory Service users and groups. To do this, however, the role must have a trust relationship with AWS Directory Service. When you use AWS Directory Service to create a role using the procedure in [Creating a New Role \(p. 90\)](#), this trust relationship is automatically set. You only need to establish this trust relationship for IAM roles that are not created by AWS Directory Service.

To establish a trust relationship for an existing role to AWS Directory Service

1. In the navigation pane of the IAM console, choose **Roles**.

The console displays the roles for your account.
2. Choose the name of the role that you want to modify, and select the **Trust relationships** tab on the details page.
3. Choose **Edit trust relationship**.
4. Under **Policy Document**, paste the following, and then choose **Update Trust Policy**.

```
{
```



```
"Version": "2012-10-17",
"Statement": [
  {
    "Sid": "",
    "Effect": "Allow",
    "Principal": {
      "Service": "ds.amazonaws.com"
    },
    "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
  }
]
```

You can also update this policy document using the IAM CLI. For more information, see [put-role-policy](#) in the *IAM Command Line Reference*.

Assigning Users or Groups to an Existing Role

You can assign an existing IAM role to an AWS Directory Service user or group. The role must have a trust relationship with AWS Directory Service. For more information, see [Editing the Trust Relationship for an Existing Role](#) (p. 91).

To assign users or groups to an existing IAM role

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, choose **Directories**.
2. On the **Directories** page, choose your directory ID.
3. On the **Directory details** page, select the **Application management** tab.
4. In the **AWS Management Console** section, under **Delegate console access**, choose the IAM role name for the existing IAM role that you want to assign users to. If the role has not yet been created, see [Creating a New Role](#) (p. 90).
5. On the **Selected role** page, under **Manage users and groups for this role**, choose **Add**.
6. On the **Add users and groups to the role** page, under **Select Active Directory Forest**, choose either the AWS Managed Microsoft AD forest (this forest) or the on-premises forest (trusted forest), whichever contains where the accounts that need access to the AWS Management Console. For more information about how to set up a trusted forest, see [Tutorial: Create a Trust Relationship Between Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD and Your On-Premises Domain](#) (p. 71).
7. Under **Specify which users or groups to add**, select either **Find by user** or **Find by group**, and then type the name of the user or group. In the list of possible matches, choose the user or group that you want to add.
8. Choose **Add** to finish assigning the users and groups to the role.

Note

Access for users in nested groups within your directory are not supported. Members of the parent group have console access, but members of child groups do not.

Viewing Users and Groups Assigned to a Role

To view the users and groups assigned to a role, perform the following steps.

To view users and group assigned to a role

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, choose **Directories**.
2. On the **Directories** page, choose your directory ID.
3. On the **Directory details** page, select the **Application management** tab.

4. Under the **AWS Management Console** section, choose the role you want to view.
5. On the **Selected role** page, under **Manage users and groups for this role**, you can view the users and groups assigned to the role.

Removing a User or Group from a Role

To remove a user or group from a role, perform the following steps.

To remove a user or group from a role

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, choose **Directories**.
2. On the **Directories** page, choose your directory ID.
3. On the **Directory details** page, select the **Application management** tab.
4. Under the **AWS Management Console** section, choose the role you want to view.
5. On the **Selected role** page, under **Manage users and groups for this role**, select the users or groups to remove the role from and choose **Remove**. The role is removed from the specified users and groups, but the role is not removed from your account.

Using AWS Managed Policies with AWS Directory Service

AWS Directory Service provides the following AWS managed policies to give your users and groups access to AWS services and resources, such as access to the Amazon EC2 console. You must log in to the AWS Management Console before you can view these policies.

- [Read Only Access](#)
- [Power User Access](#)
- [AWS Directory Service Full Access](#)
- [AWS Directory Service Read Only Access](#)
- [Amazon Cloud Directory Full Access](#)
- [Amazon Cloud Directory Read Only Access](#)
- [Amazon EC2 Full Access](#)
- [Amazon EC2 Read Only Access](#)
- [Amazon VPC Full Access](#)
- [Amazon VPC Read Only Access](#)
- [Amazon RDS Full Access](#)
- [Amazon RDS Read Only Access](#)
- [Amazon DynamoDB Full Access](#)
- [Amazon DynamoDB Read Only Access](#)
- [Amazon S3 Full Access](#)
- [Amazon S3 Read Only Access](#)
- [AWS CloudTrail Full Access](#)
- [AWS CloudTrail Read Only Access](#)
- [Amazon CloudWatch Full Access](#)
- [Amazon CloudWatch Read Only Access](#)
- [Amazon CloudWatch Logs Full Access](#)
- [Amazon CloudWatch Logs Read Only Access](#)

For more information on how to create your own policies, see [Example Policies for Administering AWS Resources](#) in the *IAM User Guide*.

Enable Access to AWS Applications and Services

AWS Directory Service can give other AWS applications and services, such as Amazon WorkSpaces, access to your directory users. The following AWS applications and services can be enabled or disabled to work with AWS Directory Service.

AWS application / service	More information...
Amazon Chime	For more information, see the Amazon Chime Administration Guide .
Amazon Connect	For more information, see the Amazon Connect Administration Guide .
Amazon FSx for Windows File Server	For more information, see Using Amazon FSx with AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory in the <i>Amazon FSx for Windows File Server User Guide</i> .
Amazon QuickSight	For more information, see the Amazon QuickSight User Guide .
Amazon Relational Database Service	For more information, see the Amazon RDS User Guide .
Amazon WorkDocs	For more information, see the Amazon WorkDocs Administration Guide .
Amazon WorkMail	For more information, see the Amazon WorkMail Administrator Guide .
Amazon WorkSpaces	<p>You can create a Simple AD, AWS Managed Microsoft AD, or AD Connector directly from Amazon WorkSpaces. Simply launch Advanced Setup when creating your Workspace.</p> <p>For more information, see the Amazon WorkSpaces Administration Guide.</p>
Amazon WorkSpaces Application Manager	For more information, see the Amazon WAM Administration Guide .
AWS Management Console	For more information, see Enable Access to the AWS Management Console with AD Credentials (p. 102).

Once enabled, you manage access to your directories in the console of the application or service that you want to give access to your directory. To find the AWS applications and services links described above in the AWS Directory Service console, perform the following steps.

To display the applications and services for a directory

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, choose **Directories**.
2. On the **Directories** page, choose your directory ID.

3. On the **Directory details** page, select the **Application management** tab.
4. Review the list under the **AWS apps & services** section.

Topics

- [Creating an Access URL \(p. 95\)](#)
- [Single Sign-On \(p. 95\)](#)

Creating an Access URL

An access URL is used with AWS applications and services, such as Amazon WorkSpaces, to reach a login page that is associated with your directory. The URL must be unique globally. You can create an access URL for your directory by performing the following steps.

Warning

Once you create an application access URL for this directory, it cannot be changed. After an access URL is created, it cannot be used by others. If you delete your directory, the access URL is also deleted and can then be used by any other account.

To create an access URL

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, select **Directories**.
2. On the **Directories** page, choose your directory ID.
3. On the **Directory details** page, select the **Application management** tab.
4. In the **Application access URL** section, if an access URL has not been assigned to the directory, the **Create** button is displayed. Enter a directory alias and choose **Create**. If an **Entity Already Exists** error is returned, the specified directory alias has already been allocated. Choose another alias and repeat this procedure.

Your access URL is displayed in the format `<alias>.awsapps.com`.

Single Sign-On

AWS Directory Service provides the ability to allow your users to access Amazon WorkDocs from a computer joined to the directory without having to enter their credentials separately.

Before you enable single sign-on, you need to take additional steps to enable your users web browsers to support single sign-on. Users may need to modify their web browser settings to enable single sign-on.

Note

Single sign-on only works when used on a computer that is joined to the AWS Directory Service directory. It cannot be used on computers that are not joined to the directory.

To enable or disable single sign-on with Amazon WorkDocs

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, select **Directories**.
2. On the **Directories** page, choose your directory ID.
3. On the **Directory details** page, select the **Application management** tab.
4. In the **Application access URL** section, choose **Enable** to enable single sign-on for Amazon WorkDocs.

If you do not see the **Enable** button, you may need to first create an Access URL before this option will be displayed. For more information about how to create an access URL, see [Creating an Access URL \(p. 95\)](#).

5. In the **Enable Single Sign-On for this directory** dialog box, choose **Enable**. Single sign-on is enabled for the directory.

If the directory is an AD Connector directory and the AD Connector service account does not have permission to add a service principal name, you are prompted for the username and password for a directory user that has this permission. These credentials are only used to enable single sign-on and are not stored by the service. The AD Connector service account is not changed.

6. If you later want to disable single sign-on with Amazon WorkDocs, choose **Disable**, and then in the **Disable Single Sign-On for this directory** dialog box, choose **Disable** again.

If the directory is an AD Connector directory and the AD Connector service account does not have permission to remove a service principal name, you are prompted for the username and password for a directory user that has this permission. These credentials are only used to disable single sign-on and are not stored by the service. The AD Connector service account is not changed.

Topics

- [Single Sign-On for IE and Chrome \(p. 96\)](#)
- [Single Sign-On for Firefox \(p. 101\)](#)

Single Sign-On for IE and Chrome

To allow Microsoft Internet Explorer (IE) and Google Chrome browsers to support single sign-on, the following tasks must be performed on the client computer:

- Add your access URL (e.g., <https://<alias>.awsapps.com>) to the list of approved sites for single sign-on.
- Enable active scripting (JavaScript).
- Allow automatic logon.
- Enable integrated authentication.

You or your users can perform these tasks manually, or you can change these settings using Group Policy settings.

Topics

- [Manual Update for Single Sign-On on Windows \(p. 96\)](#)
- [Manual Update for Single Sign-On on OS X \(p. 98\)](#)
- [Group Policy Settings for Single Sign-On \(p. 98\)](#)

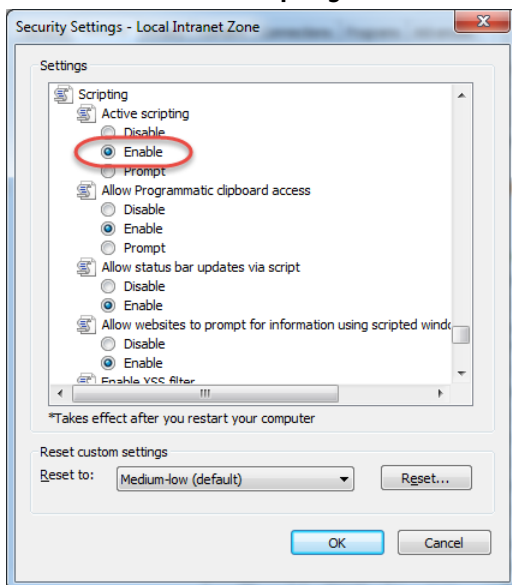
Manual Update for Single Sign-On on Windows

To manually enable single sign-on on a Windows computer, perform the following steps on the client computer. Some of these settings may already be set correctly.

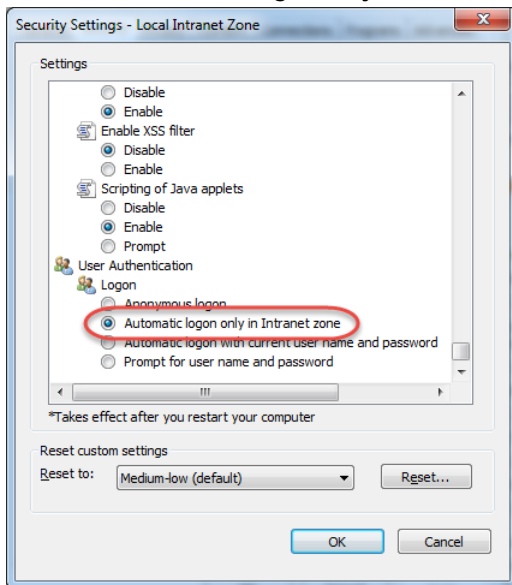
To manually enable single sign-on for Internet Explorer and Chrome on Windows

1. To open the **Internet Properties** dialog box, choose the **Start** menu, type **Internet Options** in the search box, and choose **Internet Options**.
2. Add your access URL to the list of approved sites for single sign-on by performing the following steps:
 - a. In the **Internet Properties** dialog box, select the **Security** tab.
 - b. Select **Local intranet** and choose **Sites**.

- c. In the **Local intranet** dialog box, choose **Advanced**.
 - d. Add your access URL to the list of websites and choose **Close**.
 - e. In the **Local intranet** dialog box, choose **OK**.
3. To enable active scripting, perform the following steps:
 - a. In the **Security** tab of the **Internet Properties** dialog box, choose **Custom level**.
 - b. In the **Security Settings - Local Intranet Zone** dialog box, scroll down to **Scripting** and select **Enable** under **Active scripting**.

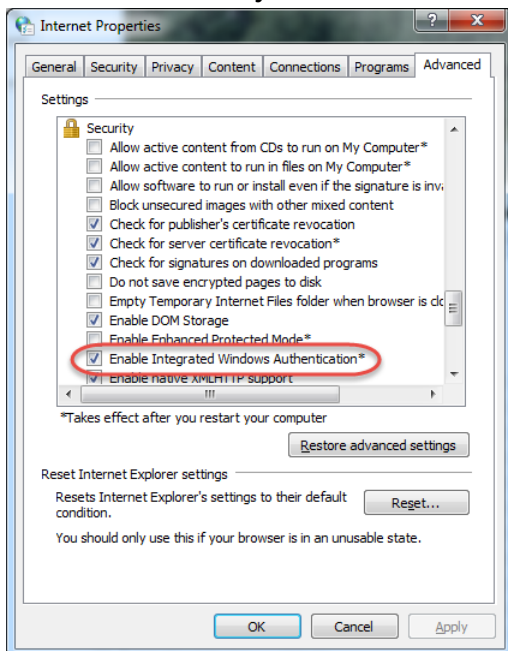


- c. In the **Security Settings - Local Intranet Zone** dialog box, choose **OK**.
4. To enable automatic logon, perform the following steps:
 - a. In the **Security** tab of the **Internet Properties** dialog box, choose **Custom level**.
 - b. In the **Security Settings - Local Intranet Zone** dialog box, scroll down to **User Authentication** and select **Automatic logon only in Intranet zone** under **Logon**.



- c. In the **Security Settings - Local Intranet Zone** dialog box, choose **OK**.

- d. In the **Security Settings - Local Intranet Zone** dialog box, choose **OK**.
5. To enable integrated authentication, perform the following steps:
 - a. In the **Internet Properties** dialog box, select the **Advanced** tab.
 - b. Scroll down to **Security** and select **Enable Integrated Windows Authentication**.



- c. In the **Internet Properties** dialog box, choose **OK**.
6. Close and re-open your browser to have these changes take effect.

Manual Update for Single Sign-On on OS X

To manually enable single sign-on for Chrome on OS X, perform the following steps on the client computer. You will need administrator rights on your computer to complete these steps.

To manually enable single sign-on for Chrome on OS X

1. Add your access URL to the [AuthServerWhitelist](#) policy by running the following command:

```
defaults write com.google.Chrome AuthServerWhitelist "https://<alias>.awsapps.com"
```

2. Open **System Preferences**, go to the **Profiles** panel, and delete the Chrome Kerberos Configuration profile.
3. Restart Chrome and open chrome://policy in Chrome to confirm that the new settings are in place.

Group Policy Settings for Single Sign-On

The domain administrator can implement Group Policy settings to make the single sign-on changes on client computers that are joined to the domain.

Note

If you manage the Chrome web browsers on the computers in your domain with Chrome policies, you must add your access URL to the [AuthServerWhitelist](#) policy. For more information about setting Chrome policies, go to [Policy Settings in Chrome](#).

To enable single sign-on for Internet Explorer and Chrome using Group Policy settings

1. Create a new Group Policy object by performing the following steps:
 - a. Open the Group Policy Management tool, navigate to your domain and select **Group Policy Objects**.
 - b. From the main menu, choose **Action** and select **New**.
 - c. In the **New GPO** dialog box, enter a descriptive name for the Group Policy object, such as SSO Policy, and leave **Source Starter GPO** set to **(none)**. Click **OK**.
2. Add the access URL to the list of approved sites for single sign-on by performing the following steps:
 - a. In the Group Policy Management tool, navigate to your domain, select **Group Policy Objects**, open the context (right-click) menu for your SSO policy, and choose **Edit**.
 - b. In the policy tree, navigate to **User Configuration > Preferences > Windows Settings**.
 - c. In the **Windows Settings** list, open the context (right-click) menu for **Registry** and choose **New registry item**.
 - d. In the **New Registry Properties** dialog box, enter the following settings and choose **OK**:

Action

Update

Hive

HKEY_CURRENT_USER

Path

Software\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Internet Settings\ZoneMap
\Domains\awsapps.com*<alias>*

The value for *<alias>* is derived from your access URL. If your access URL is `https://examplecorp.awsapps.com`, the alias is `examplecorp`, and the registry key will be `Software\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Internet Settings\ZoneMap\Domains\awsapps.com\examplecorp`.

Value name

https

Value type

REG_DWORD

Value data

1

3. To enable active scripting, perform the following steps:
 - a. In the Group Policy Management tool, navigate to your domain, select **Group Policy Objects**, open the context (right-click) menu for your SSO policy, and choose **Edit**.
 - b. In the policy tree, navigate to **Computer Configuration > Policies > Administrative Templates > Windows Components > Internet Explorer > Internet Control Panel > Security Page > Intranet Zone**.
 - c. In the **Intranet Zone** list, open the context (right-click) menu for **Allow active scripting** and choose **Edit**.
 - d. In the **Allow active scripting** dialog box, enter the following settings and choose **OK**:
 - Select the **Enabled** radio button.
 - Under **Options** set **Allow active scripting** to **Enable**.

4. To enable automatic logon, perform the following steps:
 - a. In the Group Policy Management tool, navigate to your domain, select Group Policy Objects, open the context (right-click) menu for your SSO policy, and choose **Edit**.
 - b. In the policy tree, navigate to **Computer Configuration > Policies > Administrative Templates > Windows Components > Internet Explorer > Internet Control Panel > Security Page > Intranet Zone**.
 - c. In the **Intranet Zone** list, open the context (right-click) menu for **Logon options** and choose **Edit**.
 - d. In the **Logon options** dialog box, enter the following settings and choose **OK**:
 - Select the **Enabled** radio button.
 - Under **Options** set **Logon options** to **Automatic logon only in Intranet zone**.
5. To enable integrated authentication, perform the following steps:
 - a. In the Group Policy Management tool, navigate to your domain, select **Group Policy Objects**, open the context (right-click) menu for your SSO policy, and choose **Edit**.
 - b. In the policy tree, navigate to **User Configuration > Preferences > Windows Settings**.
 - c. In the **Windows Settings** list, open the context (right-click) menu for **Registry** and choose **New registry item**.
 - d. In the **New Registry Properties** dialog box, enter the following settings and choose **OK**:

Action	Update
Hive	HKEY_CURRENT_USER
Path	Software\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Internet Settings
Value name	EnableNegotiate
Value type	REG_DWORD
Value data	1
6. Close the **Group Policy Management Editor** window if it is still open.
7. Assign the new policy to your domain by following these steps:
 - a. In the Group Policy Management tree, open the context (right-click) menu for your domain and choose **Link an Existing GPO**.
 - b. In the **Group Policy Objects** list, select your SSO policy and choose **OK**.

These changes will take effect after the next Group Policy update on the client, or the next time the user logs in.

Single Sign-On for Firefox

To allow Mozilla Firefox browser to support single sign-on, add your access URL (e.g., <https://<alias>.awsapps.com>) to the list of approved sites for single sign-on. This can be done manually, or automated with a script.

Topics

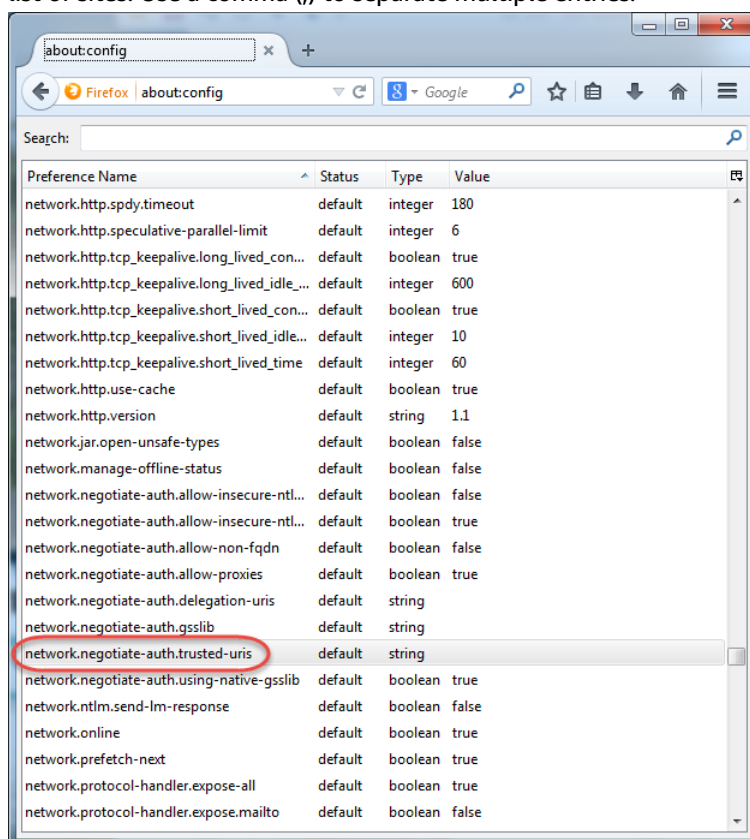
- [Manual Update for Single Sign-On \(p. 101\)](#)
- [Automatic Update for Single Sign-On \(p. 101\)](#)

Manual Update for Single Sign-On

To manually add your access URL to the list of approved sites in Firefox, perform the following steps on the client computer.

To manually add your access URL to the list of approved sites in Firefox

1. Open Firefox and open the `about:config` page.
2. Open the `network.negotiate-auth.trusted-uris` preference and add your access URL to the list of sites. Use a comma (,) to separate multiple entries.



Automatic Update for Single Sign-On

As a domain administrator, you can use a script to add your access URL to the Firefox `network.negotiate-auth.trusted-uris` user preference on all computers on your network. For more information, go to <https://support.mozilla.org/en-US/questions/939037>.

Enable Access to the AWS Management Console with AD Credentials

AWS Directory Service allows you to grant members of your directory access to the AWS Management Console. By default, your directory members do not have access to any AWS resources. You assign IAM roles to your directory members to give them access to the various AWS services and resources. The IAM role defines the services, resources, and level of access that your directory members have.

Before you can grant console access to your directory members, your directory must have an access URL. For more information about how to view directory details and get your access URL, see [View Directory Information](#) (p. 90). For more information about how to create an access URL, see [Creating an Access URL](#) (p. 95).

For more information about how to create and assign IAM roles to your directory members, see [Grant Users and Groups Access to AWS Resources](#) (p. 90).

Topics

- [Enable AWS Management Console Access](#) (p. 102)
- [Disable AWS Management Console Access](#) (p. 102)
- [Set Login Session Length](#) (p. 103)

Related AWS Security Blog Article

- [How to Access the AWS Management Console Using AWS Managed Microsoft AD and Your On-Premises Credentials](#)

Enable AWS Management Console Access

By default, console access is not enabled for any directory. To enable console access for your directory users and groups, perform the following steps:

To enable console access

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, choose **Directories**.
2. On the **Directories** page, choose your directory ID.
3. On the **Directory details** page, select the **Application management** tab.
4. Under the **AWS Management Console** section, choose **Enable**. Console access is now enabled for your directory.

Before users can sign-in to the console with your access URL, you must first add your users to the role. For general information about assigning users to IAM roles, see [Assigning Users or Groups to an Existing Role](#) (p. 92). After the IAM roles have been assigned, users can then access the console using your access URL. For example, if your directory access URL is example-corp.awsapps.com, the URL to access the console is <https://example-corp.awsapps.com/console/>.

Disable AWS Management Console Access

To disable console access for your directory users and groups, perform the following steps:

To disable console access

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, choose **Directories**.

2. On the **Directories** page, choose your directory ID.
3. On the **Directory details** page, select the **Application management** tab.
4. Under the **AWS Management Console** section, choose **Disable**. Console access is now disabled for your directory.
5. If any IAM roles have been assigned to users or groups in the directory, the **Disable** button may be unavailable. In this case, you must remove all IAM role assignments for the directory before proceeding, including assignments for users or groups in your directory that have been deleted, which will show as **Deleted User** or **Deleted Group**.

After all IAM role assignments have been removed, repeat the steps above.

Set Login Session Length

By default, users have 1 hour to use their session after successfully signing in to the console before they are logged out. After that, users must sign in again to start the next 1 hour session before being logged off again. You can use the following procedure to change the length of time to up to 12 hours per session.

To set login session length

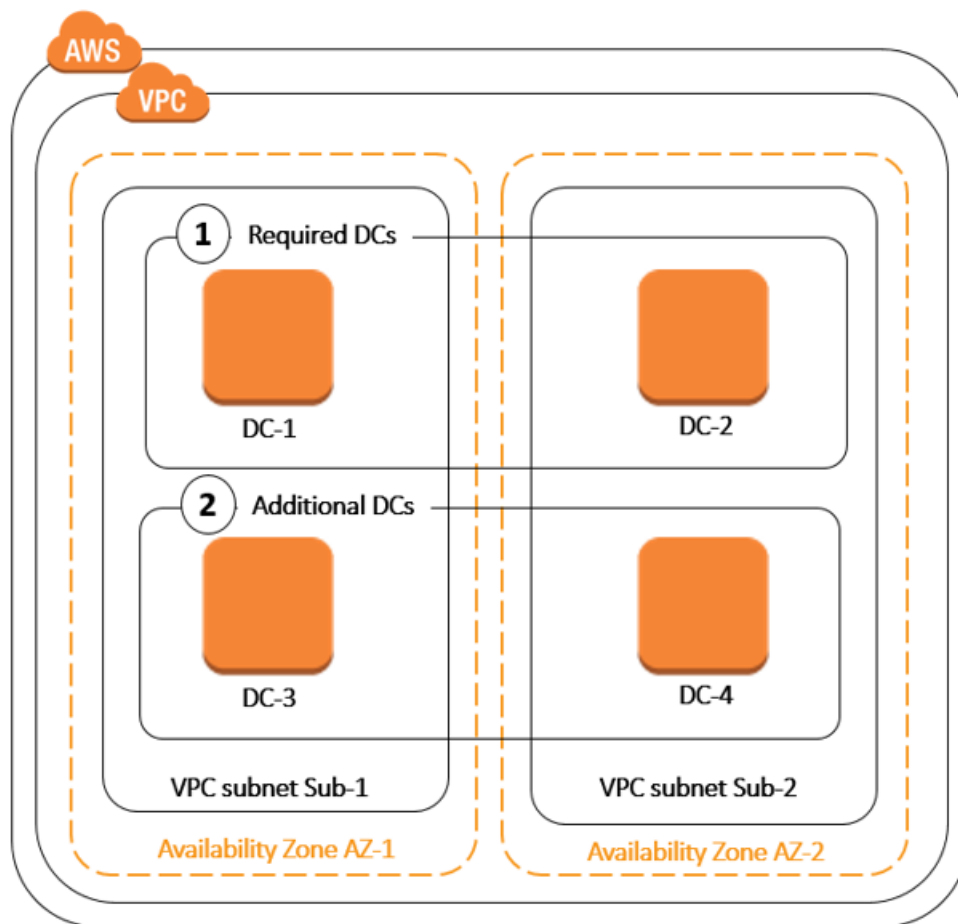
1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, choose **Directories**.
2. On the **Directories** page, choose your directory ID.
3. On the **Directory details** page, select the **Application management** tab.
4. Under the **AWS apps & services** section, choose **AWS Management Console**.
5. In the **Manage Access to AWS Resource** dialog box, choose **Continue**.
6. In the **Assign users and groups to IAM roles** page, under **Set login session length**, edit the numbered value, and then choose **Save**.

Deploy Additional Domain Controllers

Deploying additional domain controllers increases the redundancy, which results in even greater resilience and higher availability. This also improves the performance of your directory by supporting a greater number of Active Directory requests. For example, you can now use AWS Managed Microsoft AD to support multiple .NET applications that are deployed on large fleets of Amazon EC2 and Amazon RDS for SQL Server instances.

When you first create your directory, AWS Managed Microsoft AD deploys two domain controllers across multiple Availability Zones, which is required for highly availability purposes. Later, you can easily deploy additional domain controllers via the AWS Directory Service console by just specifying the total number of domain controllers that you want. AWS Managed Microsoft AD distributes the additional domain controllers to the Availability Zones and VPC subnets on which your directory is running.

For example, in the below illustration, DC-1 and DC-2 represent the two domain controllers that were originally created with your directory. The AWS Directory Service console refers to these default domain controllers as **Required**. AWS Managed Microsoft AD intentionally locates each of these domain controllers in separate Availability Zones during the directory creation process. Later, you might decide to add two more domain controllers to help distribute the authentication load over peak login times. Both DC-3 and DC-4 represent the new domain controllers, which the console now refers to as **Additional**. As before, AWS Managed Microsoft AD again automatically places the new domain controllers in different Availability Zones to ensure your domain's high availability.



This process eliminates the need for you to manually configure directory data replication, automated daily snapshots, or monitoring for the additional domain controllers. It's also easier for you to migrate and run mission critical Active Directory–integrated workloads in the AWS Cloud without having to deploy and maintain your own Active Directory infrastructure. You can also deploy or remove additional domain controllers for AWS Managed Microsoft AD using the [UpdateNumberOfDomainControllers](#) API.

Add or Remove Additional Domain Controllers

Use the following procedure to deploy or remove additional domain controllers in your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory.

Note

If you have configured your AWS Managed Microsoft AD to enable LDAPS, any additional domain controllers you add will also have LDAPS enabled automatically. For more information, see [Enable Secure LDAP \(LDAPS\)](#) (p. 26).

To add or remove additional domain controllers

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, choose **Directories**.
2. On the **Directories** page, choose your directory ID.
3. On the **Directory details** page, select the **Scale** tab.
4. In the **Domain controllers** section, choose **Edit**.
5. Specify the number of domain controllers to add or remove from your directory, and then choose **Modify**.

6. When AWS Managed Microsoft AD completes the deployment process, all domain controllers show **Active** status, and both the assigned Availability Zone and VPC subnets appear. New domain controllers are equally distributed across the Availability Zones and subnets where your directory is already deployed.

Note

After deploying additional domain controllers, you can reduce the number of domain controllers to two, which is the minimum required for fault-tolerance and high availability purposes.

Related AWS Security Blog Article

- [How to Increase the Redundancy and Performance of Your AWS Directory Service for AWS Managed Microsoft AD by Adding Domain Controllers](#)

Migrate Users from Active Directory to AWS Managed Microsoft AD

You can use the Active Directory Migration Toolkit (ADMT) along with the Password Export Service (PES) to migrate users from your self-managed AD to your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory. This enables you to migrate AD objects and encrypted passwords for your users more easily.

For detailed instructions, see [How to migrate your on-premises domain to AWS Managed Microsoft AD using ADMT](#) on the *AWS Security Blog*.

Best Practices for AWS Managed Microsoft AD

Here are some suggestions and guidelines you should consider to avoid problems and get the most out of AWS Managed Microsoft AD.

Setting Up: Prerequisites

Consider these guidelines before creating your directory.

Verify You Have the Right Directory Type

AWS Directory Service provides multiple ways to use Microsoft Active Directory with other AWS services. You can choose the directory service with the features you need at a cost that fits your budget:

- **AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory** is a feature-rich managed Microsoft Active Directory hosted on the AWS cloud. AWS Managed Microsoft AD is your best choice if you have more than 5,000 users and need a trust relationship set up between an AWS hosted directory and your on-premises directories.
- **AD Connector** simply connects your existing on-premises Active Directory to AWS. AD Connector is your best choice when you want to use your existing on-premises directory with AWS services.
- **Simple AD** is an inexpensive Active Directory-compatible service with the common directory features. In most cases, Simple AD is the least expensive option and your best choice if you have 5,000 or fewer users and don't need the more advanced Microsoft Active Directory features.

For a more detailed comparison of AWS Directory Service options, see [Which to Choose \(p. 1\)](#).

Ensure Your VPCs and Instances are Configured Correctly

In order to connect to, manage, and use your directories, you must properly configure the VPCs that the directories are associated with. See either [AWS Managed Microsoft AD Prerequisites \(p. 9\)](#), [AD Connector Prerequisites \(p. 131\)](#), or [Simple AD Prerequisites \(p. 157\)](#) for information about the VPC security and networking requirements.

If you are adding an instance to your domain, ensure that you have connectivity and remote access to your instance as described in [Join an EC2 Instance to Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Directory \(p. 46\)](#).

Be Aware of Your Limits

Learn about the various limits for your specific directory type. The available storage and the aggregate size of your objects are the only limitations on the number of objects you may store in your directory. See either [Limits for AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 109\)](#), [Limits for AD Connector \(p. 152\)](#), or [Limits for Simple AD \(p. 198\)](#) for details about your chosen directory.

Understand Your Directory's AWS Security Group Configuration and Use

AWS creates a [security group](#) and attaches it to your directory's domain controller [elastic network interfaces](#). This security group blocks unnecessary traffic to the domain controller and allows traffic that is necessary for Active Directory communications. AWS configures the security group to open only the ports that are required for Active Directory communications. In the default configuration, the security group accepts traffic to these ports from any IP address. AWS attaches the security group to your domain controllers' interfaces that are accessible from within your peered or resized [VPCs](#). These interfaces are inaccessible from the internet even if you modify routing tables, change the network connections to your VPC, and configure the [NAT Gateway service](#). As such, only instances and computers that have a network path into the VPC can access the directory. This simplifies setup by eliminating the requirement for you to configure specific address ranges. Instead, you configure routes and security groups into the VPC that permit traffic only from trusted instances and computers.

Modifying the Directory Security Group

If you want to increase the security of your directories' security groups, you can modify them to accept traffic from a more restrictive list of IP addresses. For example, you could change the accepted addresses from 0.0.0.0/0 to a CIDR range that is specific to a single subnet or computer. Similarly, you might choose to restrict the destination addresses to which your domain controllers can communicate. Make such changes only if you fully understand how security group filtering works. For more information, see [Amazon EC2 Security Groups for Linux Instances](#) in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*. Improper changes can result in loss of communications to intended computers and instances. AWS recommends that you do not attempt to open additional ports to the domain controller as this decreases the security of your directory. Please carefully review the [AWS Shared Responsibility Model](#).

Warning

It is technically possible for you to associate the security groups, which your directory uses, with other EC2 instances that you create. However, AWS recommends against this practice. AWS may have reasons to modify the security group without notice to address functional or security needs of the managed directory. Such changes affect any instances with which you associate the directory security group. Furthermore, associating the directory security group with your EC2 instances creates a potential security risk for your EC2 instances. The directory security group accepts traffic on required Active Directory ports from any IP address. If you associate this Security Group with an EC2 instance that has a public IP address attached to the internet, then any computer on the internet can communicate with your EC2 instance on the opened ports.

Setting Up: Creating Your Directory

Here are some suggestions to consider as you create your directory.

Remember Your Administrator ID and Password

When you set up your directory, you provide a password for the administrator account. That account ID is *Admin* for AWS Managed Microsoft AD. Remember the password that you create for this account; otherwise you will not be able to add objects to your directory.

Create a DHCP Options Set

We recommend that you create a DHCP options set for your AWS Directory Service directory and assign the DHCP options set to the VPC that your directory is in. That way any instances in that VPC can point to the specified domain, and DNS servers can resolve their domain names.

For more information about DHCP options sets, see [Create a DHCP Options Set \(p. 58\)](#).

Deploy additional domain controllers

By default, AWS creates two domain controllers that exist in separate Availability Zones. This provides fault resiliency during software patching and other events that may make one domain controller unreachable or unavailable. We recommend that you [deploy additional domain controllers](#) to further increase resiliency and ensure scale-out performance in the event of a longer term event that affects access to a domain controller or an Availability Zone.

For more information, see [Use the Windows DC Locator Service \(p. 109\)](#).

Understand Username Restrictions for AWS Applications

AWS Directory Service provides support for most character formats that can be used in the construction of usernames. However, there are character restrictions that are enforced on usernames that will be used for signing in to AWS applications, such as Amazon WorkSpaces, Amazon WorkDocs, Amazon WorkMail, or Amazon QuickSight. These restrictions require that the following characters not be used:

- Spaces
- !"#%&'()*+,-/;<=>@[\\]^_`{|}~

Note

The @ symbol is allowed as long as it precedes a UPN suffix.

Using Your Directory

Here are some suggestions to keep in mind when using your directory.

Do Not Alter Predefined Users, Groups and Organization Units

When you use AWS Directory Service to launch a directory, AWS creates an organizational unit (OU) that contains all your directory's objects. This OU, which has the NetBIOS name that you typed when you created your directory, is located in the domain root. The domain root is owned and managed by AWS. Several groups and an administrative user are also created.

Do not move, delete or in any other way alter these predefined objects. Doing so can make your directory inaccessible by both yourself and AWS. For more information, see [What Gets Created \(p. 11\)](#).

Automatically Join Domains

When launching a Windows instance that is to be part of an AWS Directory Service domain, it is often easiest to join the domain as part of the instance creation process rather than manually adding the instance later. To automatically join a domain, simply select the correct directory for **Domain join directory** when launching a new instance. You can find details in [Seamlessly Join a Windows EC2 Instance](#) (p. 46).

Set Up Trusts Correctly

When setting up trust relationship between your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory and another directory, keep in mind these guidelines:

- Both trusts must be forest trusts.
- Both fully qualified domain names (FQDNs) must be unique.
- If adding a NetBIOS name, that should also be unique.

For more details and specific instructions on setting up a trust relationship, see [When to Create a Trust Relationship](#) (p. 64).

Managing Your Directory

Consider these suggestions for managing your directory.

Carefully Plan For Schema Extensions

Thoughtfully apply schema extensions to index your directory for important and frequent queries. Use care to not over-index the directory as indexes consume directory space and rapidly changing indexed values can result in performance problems. To add indexes, you must create a Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) Directory Interchange Format (LDIF) file and extend your schema change. For more information, see [Extend Your Schema](#) (p. 82).

About Load Balancers

Do not use a load balancer in front of the AWS Managed Microsoft AD end-points. Microsoft designed Active Directory (AD) for use with a domain controller (DC) discovery algorithm that finds the most responsive operational DC without external load balancing. External network load balancers inaccurately detect active DCs and can result in your application being sent to a DC that is coming up but not ready for use. For more information, see [Load balancers and Active Directory](#) on Microsoft TechNet which recommends fixing applications to use AD correctly rather than implementing external load balancers.

Make a Backup of Your Instance

If you decide to manually add an instance to an existing AWS Directory Service domain, make a backup or take a snapshot of that instance first. This is particularly important when joining a Linux instance. Some of the procedures used to add an instance, if not performed correctly, can render your instance unreachable or unusable. For more information, see [Snapshot or Restore Your Directory](#) (p. 88).

Set Up SNS Messaging

With Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS), you can receive email or text (SMS) messages when the status of your directory changes. You will be notified if your directory goes from an **Active** status to an **Impaired** or **Inoperable** status. You also receive a notification when the directory returns to an Active status.

Also remember that if you have an SNS topic that receives messages from AWS Directory Service, before deleting that topic from the Amazon SNS console, you should associate your directory with a different SNS topic. Otherwise you risk missing important directory status messages. For information about how to set up Amazon SNS, see [Configure Directory Status Notifications \(p. 33\)](#).

Remove Amazon Enterprise Applications Before Deleting a Directory

Before deleting a directory that is associated with one or more Amazon Enterprise Applications such as, Amazon WorkSpaces, Amazon WorkSpaces Application Manager, Amazon WorkDocs, Amazon WorkMail, AWS Management Console, or Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS), you must first remove each application. For more information how to remove these applications, see [Delete Your Directory \(p. 87\)](#).

Programming Your Applications

Before you program your applications, consider the following:

Use the Windows DC Locator Service

When developing applications, use the Windows DC locator service or use the Dynamic DNS (DDNS) service of your AWS Managed Microsoft AD to locate domain controllers (DCs). Do not hard code applications with the address of a DC. The DC locator service helps ensure directory load is distributed and enables you to take advantage of horizontal scaling by adding domain controllers to your deployment. If you bind your application to a fixed DC and the DC undergoes patching or recovery, your application will lose access to the DC instead of using one of the remaining DCs. Furthermore, hard coding of the DC can result in hot spotting on a single DC. In severe cases, hot spotting may cause your DC to become unresponsive. Such cases may also cause AWS directory automation to flag the directory as impaired and may trigger recovery processes that replace the unresponsive DC.

Load Test Before Rolling Out to Production

Be sure to do lab testing with objects and requests that are representative of your production workload to confirm that the directory scales to the load of your application. Should you require additional capacity, test with additional DCs while distributing requests between the DCs. For more information, see [Deploy Additional Domain Controllers \(p. 103\)](#).

Use Efficient LDAP Queries

Broad LDAP queries to a domain controller across tens of thousands of objects can consume significant CPU cycles in a single DC, resulting in hot spotting. This may affect applications that share the same DC during the query.

Limits for AWS Managed Microsoft AD

The following are the default limits for AWS Managed Microsoft AD. Each limit is per region unless otherwise noted.

AWS Managed Microsoft AD Limits

Resource	Default Limit
AWS Managed Microsoft AD directories	10
Manual snapshots *	5 per AWS Managed Microsoft AD

Resource	Default Limit
Maximum number of domain controllers per directory	20

* The manual snapshot limit cannot be changed.

Note

You cannot attach a public IP address to your AWS elastic network interface (ENI).

For information regarding application design and load distribution, see [Programming Your Applications \(p. 109\)](#).

For storage and object limits, see the **Comparison Table** on the [AWS Directory Service Pricing](#) page.

Increase Your Limit

Perform the following steps to increase your limit for a region.

To request a limit increase for a region

1. Go to the [AWS Support Center](#) page, sign in, if necessary, and click **Open a new case**.
2. Under **Regarding**, select **Service Limit Increase**.
3. Under **Limit Type**, select **AWS Directory Service**.
4. Fill in all of the necessary fields in the form and click the button at the bottom of the page for your desired method of contact.

Application Compatibility Policy for AWS Managed Microsoft AD

AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory (AWS Managed Microsoft AD) is compatible with multiple AWS services and third-party applications.

The following is a list of compatible AWS applications and services:

- Amazon Chime - For detailed instructions, see [Connect to Your Active Directory](#).
- Amazon Connect - For more information, see [How Amazon Connect Works](#).
- Amazon EC2 – For more information, see [Join an EC2 Instance to Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Directory \(p. 46\)](#).
- Amazon FSx for Windows File Server – For more information, see [What is Amazon FSx for Windows File Server?](#).
- AWS Management Console – For more information, see [Enable Access to the AWS Management Console with AD Credentials \(p. 102\)](#).
- Amazon QuickSight - For more information, see [Managing User Accounts in Amazon QuickSight Enterprise Edition](#).
- Amazon RDS for SQL Server - For more information, see [Using Windows Authentication with a Microsoft SQL Server DB Instance](#).
- AWS Single Sign-On - For detailed instructions, see [Connect AWS SSO to an On-Premises Active Directory](#).
- Amazon WorkDocs - For detailed instructions, see [Connecting to Your On-Premises Directory with AWS Managed Microsoft AD](#).

- Amazon WorkMail - For detailed instructions, see [Integrate Amazon WorkMail with an Existing Directory \(Standard Setup\)](#).
- Amazon WorkSpaces - For detailed instructions, see [Launch a WorkSpace Using AWS Managed Microsoft AD](#).

Due to the magnitude of custom and commercial off-the-shelf applications that use Active Directory, AWS does not and cannot perform formal or broad verification of third-party application compatibility with AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory (AWS Managed Microsoft AD). Although AWS works with customers in an attempt to overcome any potential application installation challenges they might encounter, we are unable to guarantee that any application is or will continue to be compatible with AWS Managed Microsoft AD.

The following third-party applications are compatible with AWS Managed Microsoft AD:

- Active Directory Federation Services (AD FS)
- Application Server (.NET)
- Azure Active Directory (AD) Connect
- Enterprise Certificate Authority
- Remote Desktop Licensing Manager
- SharePoint Server
- SQL Server (includes Always On Availability Groups)
- System Center Configuration Manager (SCCM) - The user deploying SCCM must be a member of the AWS Delegated System Management Administrators group.

Note that not all configurations of these applications may be supported.

Compatibility Guidelines

Although applications may have configurations that are incompatible, application deployment configurations can often overcome incompatibility. The following describes the most common reasons for application incompatibility. Customers can use this information to investigate compatibility characteristics of a desired application and identify potential deployment changes.

- **Domain administrator or other privileged permissions** – Some applications state that you must install them as the domain administrator. Because AWS must retain exclusive control of this permission level in order to deliver Active Directory as a managed service, you cannot act as the domain administrator to install such applications. However, you can often install such applications by delegating specific, less privileged, and AWS supported permissions to the person who performs the installation. For more details on the precise permissions that your application requires, ask your application provider. For more information about permissions that AWS allows you to delegate, see [What Gets Created \(p. 11\)](#).
- **Access to privileged Active Directory containers** – Within your directory, AWS Managed Microsoft AD provides an Organizational Unit (OU) over which you have full administrative control. You do not have create or write permissions and may have limited read permissions to containers that are higher in the Active Directory tree than your OU. Applications that create or access containers for which you have no permissions might not work. However, such applications often have an ability to use a container that you create in your OU as an alternative. Check with your application provider to find ways to create and use a container in your OU as an alternative. For more information on managing your OU, see [How To Administer AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 20\)](#).
- **Schema changes during the install workflow** – Some Active Directory applications require changes to the default Active Directory schema, and they may attempt to install those changes as part of the application installation workflow. Due to the privileged nature of schema extensions, AWS makes this possible by importing Lightweight Directory Interchange Format (LDIF) files through the AWS

Directory Service console, CLI, or SDK only. Such applications often come with an LDIF file that you can apply to the directory through the AWS Directory Service schema update process. For more information about how the LDIF import process works, see [Tutorial: Extending Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Schema \(p. 82\)](#). You can install the application in a way to bypass the schema installation during the installation process.

Known Incompatible Applications

The following lists commonly requested commercial off-the-shelf applications for which we have not found a configuration that works with AWS Managed Microsoft AD. AWS updates this list from time to time at its sole discretion as a courtesy to help you avoid unproductive efforts. AWS provide this information without warranty or claims regarding current or future compatibility.

- Microsoft Exchange

AWS Managed Microsoft AD Test Lab Tutorials

This section provides a series of guided tutorials to help you establish a test lab environment in AWS where you can experiment with AWS Managed Microsoft AD.

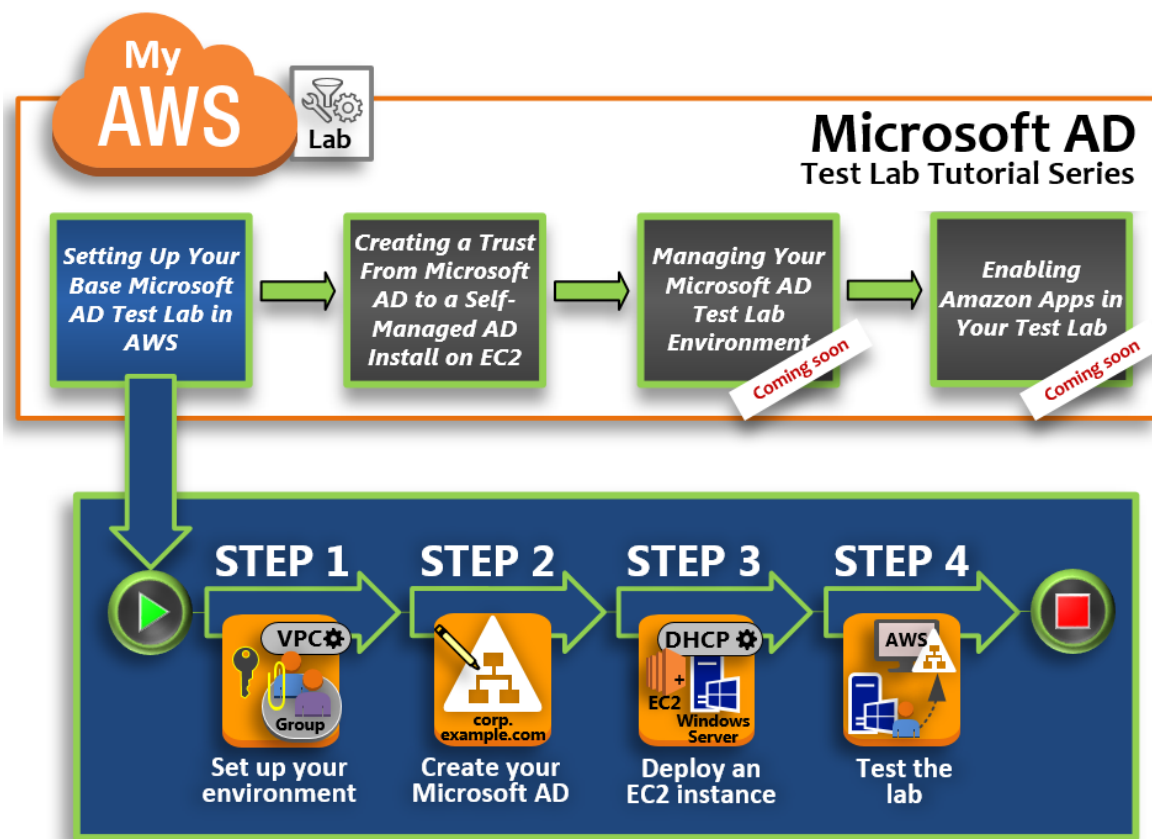
Topics

- [Tutorial: Setting Up Your Base AWS Managed Microsoft AD Test Lab in AWS \(p. 112\)](#)
- [Tutorial: Creating a Trust from AWS Managed Microsoft AD to a Self-Managed Active Directory Installation on Amazon EC2 \(p. 121\)](#)

Tutorial: Setting Up Your Base AWS Managed Microsoft AD Test Lab in AWS

This tutorial teaches you how to set up your AWS environment to prepare for a new AWS Managed Microsoft AD installation that uses a new EC2 instance running Windows Server 2016. It then teaches you to use typical Active Directory administration tools to manage your AWS Managed Microsoft AD environment from your Windows system. By the time you complete the tutorial, you will have set up the network prerequisites and have configured a new AWS Managed Microsoft AD forest.

As shown in the following illustration, the lab you create from this tutorial is the foundational component for hands-on learning about AWS Managed Microsoft AD. You can later add optional tutorials for more hands-on experience. This tutorial series is ideal for anyone who is new to AWS Managed Microsoft AD and wants a test lab for evaluation purposes. This tutorial takes approximately 1 hour to complete.



Step 1: Set Up Your AWS Environment for AWS Managed Microsoft AD (p. 114)

After you've completed your prerequisite tasks, you create and configure a VPC in your EC2 instance.

Step 2: Create Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Directory in AWS (p. 116)

In this step, you set up AWS Managed Microsoft AD in AWS for the first time.

Step 3: Deploy an EC2 Instance to Manage AWS Managed Microsoft AD (p. 117)

Here, you walk through the various post-deployment tasks necessary for client computers to connect to your new domain and set up a new Windows Server system in EC2.

Step 4: Verify That the Base Test Lab Is Operational (p. 120)

Finally, as an administrator, you verify that you can log in and connect to AWS Managed Microsoft AD from your Windows Server system in EC2. Once you've successfully tested that the lab is operational, you can continue to add other test lab guide modules.

Prerequisites

If you plan to use only the UI steps in this tutorial to create your test lab, you can skip this prerequisites section and move on to Step 1. However, if you plan to use either AWS CLI commands or AWS Tools for Windows PowerShell modules to create your test lab environment, you must first configure the following:

- **IAM user with the access and secret access key** – An IAM user with an access key is required if you want to use the AWS CLI or AWS Tools for Windows PowerShell modules. If you do not have an access key, see [Creating, Modifying, and Viewing Access Keys \(AWS Management Console\)](#).

- **AWS Command Line Interface (optional)** – Download and [Install the AWS CLI on Windows](#). Once installed, open the command prompt or Windows PowerShell window, and then type **aws configure**. Note that you need the access key and secret key to complete the setup. See the first prerequisite for steps on how to do this. You will be prompted for the following:
 - AWS access key ID [None]: AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE
 - AWS secret access key [None]: wJalrXUtnFEMI/K7MDENG/bPxrFiCYEXAMPLEKEY
 - Default region name [None]: us-west-2
 - Default output format [None]: json
- **AWS Tools for Windows PowerShell (optional)** – Download and install the latest version of the AWS Tools for Windows PowerShell from <https://aws.amazon.com/powershell/>, and then run the following command. Note that you need your access key and secret key to complete the setup. See the first prerequisite for the steps on how to do this.

```
Set-AWSCredentials -AccessKey {AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE} -SecretKey  
{wJalrXUtnFEMI/K7MDENG/ bPxrFiCYEXAMPLEKEY} -StoreAs {default}
```

Step 1: Set Up Your AWS Environment for AWS Managed Microsoft AD

Before you can create AWS Managed Microsoft AD in your AWS test lab, you first need to set up your Amazon EC2 key pair so that all login data is encrypted.

Create a Key Pair

If you already have a key pair, you can skip this step. For more information about Amazon EC2 key pairs, see <http://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/UserGuide/ec2-key-pairs.html>.

To create a key pair

1. Sign in to the AWS Management Console and open the Amazon EC2 console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/ec2/>.
2. In the navigation pane, under **Network & Security**, choose **Key Pairs**, and then choose **Create Key Pair**.
3. For **Key pair name**, type **AWS-DS-KP**, and then choose **Create**.
4. The private key file is automatically downloaded by your browser. The file name is the name you specified when you created your key pair with an extension of **.pem**. Save the private key file in a safe place.

Important

This is the only chance for you to save the private key file. You need to provide the name of your key pair when you launch an instance and the corresponding private key each time you decrypt the password for the instance.

Create a VPC

In this procedure you use a AWS CloudFormation template to create your VPC network. For more information about how this template works, see [Amazon VPC QuickStart guide](#). For this tutorial, we will set up a public VPC. However you can make your VPC a private VPC as long as you create a network path to your VPC with Amazon Direct Connect, or with a Virtual Private Network (VPN) connection.

If you would like to use the default VPC (172.31.0.0/16), you can advance to the next section. All of the AWS CLI and PowerShell examples use custom VPC information. For more information, see [Amazon Virtual Private Cloud \(Amazon VPC\)](#).

To create a VPC

1. Launch the AWS CloudFormation template into your AWS account. Click [here](#) while signed on to your account.

The template is launched in the US West (Oregon) Region by default. To change the region, use the region selector in the navigation bar. This stack takes approximately five minutes to create.

2. On the **Select Template** page, keep the default setting for the Amazon S3 template URL and then choose **Next**.
3. On the **Specify Details** page, set the stack name to **AWS-DS-VPC**. Then do the following:
 - Under **Availability Zone Configuration** select two zones in your area. Then for **Number of Availability Zones** select **2**.
 - Under **Network Configuration**, set **Create private subnets** to **false**. Then in **Create additional private subnets with dedicated network ACLs**, select **false**.
 - Under **Amazon EC2 Configuration**, set **Key pair name** to **AWS-DS-KP** or use an existing key pair.
4. Review your information, and then choose **Next**.
5. On the **Options** page, choose **Next**.
6. On the **Review** page, choose **Create**.

Create a Security Group for EC2 Instances

By default, AWS Managed Microsoft AD creates a security group to manage traffic between its domain controllers. In this procedure, you create a security group that manages traffic within your VPC for your EC2 instances. You also add a rule that allows RDP (3389) inbound from anywhere and for all traffic types inbound from the local VPC. For more information, see [Amazon EC2 Security Groups for Windows Instances](#).

To create a security group for EC2 instances

1. Open the Amazon VPC console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/vpc/>.
2. Under **Security**, choose **Security Groups**.
3. Choose **Create Security Group**.
4. In the **Create Security Group** dialog box provide the following values:
 - For **Security group name**, type **AWS_DS_RDP_Security_Group**.
 - For **Description**, type **AWS_DS_RDP_Security_Group**.
 - For **VPC**, select the VPC that ends with **AWS-DS-VPC**.
5. Choose **Create**.
6. Select **AWS_DS_RDP_Security_Group**.
7. Choose the **Inbound Rules** tab below the list of security groups.
8. Choose **Edit rules**, and then choose **Add Rule**.
9. In the table, add the following values:
 - For **Type**, choose **RDP (3389)**.
 - For **Protocol**, verify that **TCP (6)** is displayed.
 - For **Port Range**, verify that **3389** is displayed.
 - For **Source**, specify a single IP address, or an IP address range in CIDR notation (for example, 203.0.113.5/32). You can also specify the name or ID of another security group in the same region. This setting determines the traffic that can reach your EC2 instances. For

more information, see [Understand Your Directory's AWS Security Group Configuration and Use \(p. 106\)](#).

10. Choose **Add Rule**, and then provide the following values:

- For **Type**, choose **All Traffic**.
- For **Protocol**, verify that **All** is displayed.
- For **Port Range**, verify that **All** is displayed.
- For **Source**, type **10.0.0.0/16**.

11. Choose **Save rules**.

Step 2: Create Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Directory in AWS

You can use three different methods to create your directory. You can use the AWS Management Console procedure (recommended for this tutorial) or you can use either the AWS CLI or AWS Tools for Windows PowerShell procedures to create your directory.

Method 1: To create your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory (AWS Management Console)

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, choose **Directories** and then choose **Set up directory**.
2. On the **Select directory type** page, choose **AWS Managed Microsoft AD**, and then choose **Next**.
3. On the **Enter directory information** page, provide the following information, and then choose **Next**.
 - For **Edition**, select either **Standard Edition** or **Enterprise Edition**. For more information about editions, see [AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory](#).
 - For **Directory DNS name**, type **corp.example.com**.
 - For **Directory NetBIOS name**, type **corp**.
 - For **Directory description**, type **AWS DS Managed**.
 - For **Admin password**, type the password you want to use for this account and type the password again in **Confirm password**. This **Admin** account is automatically created during the directory creation process. The password cannot include the word *admin*. The directory administrator password is case sensitive and must be between 8 and 64 characters in length, inclusive. It must also contain at least one character from three of the following four categories:
 - Lowercase letters (a-z)
 - Uppercase letters (A-Z)
 - Numbers (0-9)
 - Non-alphanumeric characters (~!@#\$\$%^&*_-+=`\'\"{}[];:;'"<>.,?/)
4. On the **Choose VPC and subnets** page, provide the following information, and then choose **Next**.
 - For **VPC**, choose the option that begins with **AWS-DS-VPC** and ends with **(10.0.0.0/16)**.
 - For **Subnets**, choose the **10.0.128.0/20** and **10.0.144.0/20** public subnets.
5. On the **Review & create** page, review the directory information and make any necessary changes. When the information is correct, choose **Create directory**. Creating the directory takes 20 to 40 minutes. Once created, the **Status** value changes to **Active**.

Method 2: To create your AWS Managed Microsoft AD (Windows PowerShell) (Optional)

1. Open Windows PowerShell.
2. Type the following command. Make sure to use the values provided in Step 4 of the preceding AWS Management Console procedure.

```
New-DSMicrosoftAD -Name corp.example.com -ShortName corp -Password  
P@ssw0rd -Description "AWS DS Managed" - VpcSettings_VpcId vpc-xxxxxxx -  
VpcSettings_SubnetId subnet-xxxxxxx, subnet-xxxxxxx
```

Method 3: To create your AWS Managed Microsoft AD (AWS CLI) (Optional)

1. Open the AWS CLI.
2. Type the following command. Make sure to use the values provided in Step 4 of the preceding AWS Management Console procedure.

```
aws ds create-microsoft-ad --name corp.example.com --short-name corp --  
password P@ssw0rd --description "AWS DS Managed" --vpc-settings VpcId= vpc-  
xxxxxxx,SubnetIds= subnet-xxxxxxx, subnet-xxxxxxx
```

Step 3: Deploy an EC2 Instance to Manage AWS Managed Microsoft AD

For this lab, we are using EC2 instances that have public IP addresses to make it easy to access the management instance from anywhere. In a production setting, you can use instances that are in a private VPC that are only accessible through a VPN or Amazon Direct Connect link. There is no requirement the instance have a public IP address.

In this section, you walk through the various post-deployment tasks necessary for client computers to connect to your domain using the Windows Server on your new EC2 instance. You use the Windows Server in the next step to verify that the lab is operational.

Create a DHCP Options Set for Your Directory

In this procedure, you set up a DHCP option scope so that EC2 instances in your VPC automatically use your AWS Managed Microsoft AD for DNS resolution. For more information, see [DHCP Options Sets](#).

To create a DHCP options set for your directory

1. Open the Amazon VPC console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/vpc/>.
 2. In the navigation pane, choose **DHCP Options Sets**, and then choose **Create DHCP options set**.
 3. On the **Create DHCP options set** page, provide the following values for your directory:
 - For **Name**, type **AWS DS DHCP**.
 - For **Domain name**, type **corp.example.com**.
 - For **Domain name servers**, type the IP addresses of your AWS provided directory's DNS servers.
- Note**
To find these addresses, go to the AWS Directory Service **Directories** page, and then choose the applicable directory ID. On the **Details** page, identify and use the IPs that are displayed in **DNS address**.
- Leave the settings blank for **NTP servers**, **NetBIOS name servers**, and **NetBIOS node type**.
 4. Choose **Create DHCP options set**, and then choose **Close**. The new set of DHCP options appear in your list of DHCP options.
 5. Make a note of the ID of the new set of DHCP options (**dopt-xxxxxxx**). You use it at the end of this procedure when you associate the new options set with your VPC.
 6. In the navigation pane, choose **Your VPCs**.
 7. In the list of VPCs, select **AWS DS VPC**, choose **Actions**, and then choose **Edit DHCP options set**.

8. On the **Edit DHCP options set** page, select the options set that you recorded in Step 5, and then choose **Save**.

Create a Role to Join Windows Instances to Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Domain

Use this procedure to configure a role that joins an EC2 Windows instance to a domain. For more information, see [Seamlessly Join a Windows EC2 Instance](#) in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide for Windows Instances*.

To configure EC2 to join Windows instances to your domain

1. Open the IAM console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/iam/>.
2. In the navigation pane of the IAM console, choose **Roles**, and then choose **Create role**.
3. Under **Select type of trusted entity**, choose **AWS service**.
4. Immediately under **Choose the service that will use this role**, choose **EC2**, and then choose **Next: Permissions**.
5. On the **Attached permissions policy** page, do the following:
 - Select the box next to the **AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore** managed policy. This policy provides the minimum permissions necessary to use the Systems Manager service.
 - Select the box next to **AmazonSSMDirectoryServiceAccess** managed policy. The policy provides the permissions to join instances to an Active Directory managed by AWS Directory Service.

For information about these managed policies and other policies you can attach to an IAM instance profile for Systems Manager, see [Create an IAM Instance Profile for Systems Manager](#) in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*. For information about managed policies, see [AWS Managed Policies](#) in the *IAM User Guide*.

6. Choose **Next: Tags**.
7. (Optional) Add one or more tag key-value pairs to organize, track, or control access for this role, and then choose **Next: Review**.
8. For **Role name**, enter a name for the role that describes that it is used to join instances to a domain, such as **EC2DomainJoin**.
9. (Optional) For **Role description**, enter a description.
10. Choose **Create role**. The system returns you to the **Roles** page.

Create an EC2 Instance and Automatically Join the Directory

In this procedure you set up a Windows Server system in Amazon EC2 that can be used later to administer users, groups, and policies in Active Directory.

To create an EC2 instance and automatically join the directory

1. Open the Amazon EC2 console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/ec2/>.
2. Choose **Launch Instance**.
3. On the **Step 1** page, next to **Microsoft Windows Server 2016 Base - ami-xxxxxxx** choose **Select**.
4. On the **Step 2** page, select **t2.micro** (note, you can choose a larger instance type), and then choose **Next: Configure Instance Details**.
5. On the **Step 3** page, do the following:
 - For **Network**, choose the VPC that ends with **AWS-DS-VPC** (for example, **vpc-xxxxxxx | AWS-DS-VPC**).

- For **Subnet** choose **Public subnet 1**, which should be preconfigured for your preferred Availability Zone (for example, **subnet-xxxxxxx | Public subnet1 | us-west-2a**).
 - For **Auto-assign Public IP**, choose **Enable** (if the subnet setting is not set to enable by default).
 - For **Domain join directory**, choose **corp.example.com (d-xxxxxxx)**.
 - For **IAM role** choose the name you gave your instance role in [Create a Role to Join Windows Instances to Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Domain \(p. 118\)](#), such as **EC2DomainJoin**.
 - Leave the rest of the settings at their defaults.
 - Choose **Next: Add Storage**.
6. On the **Step 4** page, leave the default settings, and then choose **Next: Add Tags**.
 7. On the **Step 5** page, choose **Add Tag**. Under **Key** type **corp.example.com-mgmt** and then choose **Next: Configure Security Group**.
 8. On the **Step 6** page, choose **Select an existing security group**, select **AWS DS RDP Security Group**, and then choose **Review and Launch** to review your instance.
 9. On the **Step 7** page, review the page, and then choose **Launch**.
 10. On the **Select an existing key pair or create a new key pair** dialog box, do the following:
 - Choose **Choose an existing key pair**.
 - Under **Select a key pair**, choose **AWS-DS-KP**.
 - Select the **I acknowledge...** check box.
 - Choose **Launch Instances**.
 11. Choose **View Instances** to return to the Amazon EC2 console and view the status of the deployment.

Install the Active Directory Tools on Your EC2 Instance

You can choose from two methods to install the Active Directory Domain Management Tools on your EC2 instance. You can use the Server Manager UI (recommended for this tutorial) or Windows PowerShell.

To install the Active Directory Tools on your EC2 instance (Server Manager)

1. In the Amazon EC2 console, choose **Instances**, select the instance you just created, and then choose **Connect**.
2. In the **Connect To Your Instance** dialog box, choose **Get Password** to retrieve your password if you haven't already, and then choose **Download Remote Desktop File**.
3. In the **Windows Security** dialog box, type your local administrator credentials for the Windows Server computer to log in (for example, **administrator**).
4. From the **Start** menu, choose **Server Manager**.
5. In the **Dashboard**, choose **Add Roles and Features**.
6. In the **Add Roles and Features Wizard**, choose **Next**.
7. On the **Select installation type** page, choose **Role-based or feature-based installation**, and then choose **Next**.
8. On the **Select destination server** page, make sure that the local server is selected, and then choose **Next**.
9. On the **Select server roles** page, choose **Next**.
10. On the **Select features** page, do the following:
 - Select the **Group Policy Management** check box.
 - Expand **Remote Server Administration Tools**, and then expand **Role Administration Tools**.

- Select the **AD DS and AD LDS Tools** check box.
 - Select the **DNS Server Tools** check box.
 - Choose **Next**.
11. On the **Confirm installation selections** page, review the information, and then choose **Install**. When the feature installation is finished, the following new tools or snap-ins will be available in the Windows Administrative Tools folder in the Start menu.
- Active Directory Administrative Center
 - Active Directory Domains and Trusts
 - Active Directory Module for Windows PowerShell
 - Active Directory Sites and Services
 - Active Directory Users and Computers
 - ADSI Edit
 - DNS
 - Group Policy Management

To install the Active Directory Tools on your EC2 instance (Windows PowerShell) (Optional)

1. Start Windows PowerShell.
2. Type the following command.

```
Install-WindowsFeature -Name GPMC,RSAT-AD-PowerShell,RSAT-AD-AdminCenter,RSAT-ADDS-Tools,RSAT-DNS-Server
```

Step 4: Verify That the Base Test Lab Is Operational

Use the following procedure to verify that the test lab has been set up successfully before adding on additional test lab guide modules. This procedure verifies that your Windows Server is configured appropriately, can connect to the corp.example.com domain, and be used to administer your AWS Managed Microsoft AD forest.

To verify that the test lab is operational

1. Sign out of the EC2 instance where you were logged in as the local administrator.
2. Back in the Amazon EC2 console, choose **Instances** in the navigation pane. Then select the instance that you created. Choose **Connect**.
3. In the **Connect To Your Instance** dialog box, choose **Download Remote Desktop File**.
4. In the **Windows Security** dialog box, type your administrator credentials for the CORP domain to log in (for example, **corp\admin**).
5. Once you are logged in, in the **Start** menu, under **Windows Administrative Tools**, choose **Active Directory Users and Computers**.
6. You should see **corp.example.com** displayed with all the default OUs and accounts associated with a new domain. Under **Domain Controllers**, notice the names of the domain controllers that were automatically created when you created your AWS Managed Microsoft AD back in Step 2 of this tutorial.

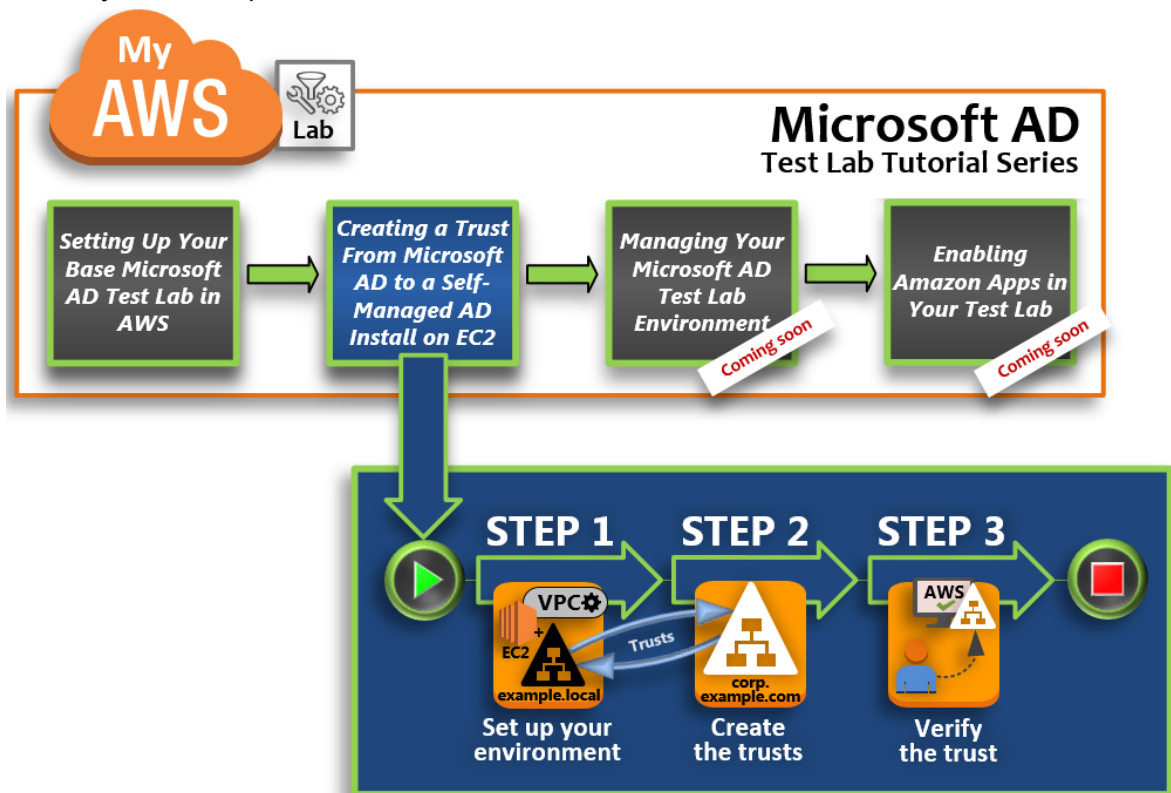
Congratulations! Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD base test lab environment has now been configured. You are ready to begin adding the next test lab in the series.

Next tutorial: [Tutorial: Creating a Trust from AWS Managed Microsoft AD to a Self-Managed Active Directory Installation on Amazon EC2 \(p. 121\)](#)

Tutorial: Creating a Trust from AWS Managed Microsoft AD to a Self-Managed Active Directory Installation on Amazon EC2

In this tutorial, you learn how to create a trust between the AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory forest that you created in the [Base tutorial \(p. 112\)](#). You also learn to create a new native Active Directory forest on a Windows Server in Amazon EC2. As shown in the following illustration, the lab that you create from this tutorial is the second building block necessary when setting up a complete AWS Managed Microsoft AD test lab. You can use the test lab to test your pure cloud or hybrid cloud-based AWS solutions.

You should only need to create this tutorial once. After that you can add optional tutorials when necessary for more experience.



Step 1: Set Up Your Environment for Trusts (p. 122)

Before you can establish trusts between a new Active Directory forest and the AWS Managed Microsoft AD forest that you created in the [Base tutorial \(p. 112\)](#), you need to prepare your Amazon EC2 environment. To do that, you first create a Windows Server 2016 server, promote that server to a domain controller, and then configure your VPC accordingly.

Step 2: Create the Trusts (p. 125)

In this step, you create a two-way forest trust relationship between your newly created Active Directory forest hosted in Amazon EC2 and your AWS Managed Microsoft AD forest in AWS.

Step 3: Verify the Trust (p. 126)

Finally, as an administrator, you use the AWS Directory Service console to verify that the new trusts are operational.

Step 1: Set Up Your Environment for Trusts

In this section, you set up your Amazon EC2 environment, deploy your new forest, and prepare your VPC for trusts with AWS.

Create a Windows Server 2016 EC2 Instance

Use the following procedure to create a Windows Server 2016 member server in Amazon EC2.

To create a Windows Server 2016 EC2 instance

1. Open the Amazon EC2 console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/ec2/>.
2. In the Amazon EC2 console, choose **Launch Instance**.
3. On the **Step 1** page, locate **Microsoft Windows Server 2016 Base - ami-xxxxxxx** in the list. Then choose **Select**.
4. On the **Step 2** page, select **t2.large**, and then choose **Next: Configure Instance Details**.
5. On the **Step 3** page, do the following:
 - For **Network**, select **vpc-xxxxxxx AWS-DS-VPC** (which you previously set up in the [Base tutorial \(p. 114\)](#)).
 - For **Subnet**, select **subnet-xxxxxxx | Public subnet2 | (YourAZ)**.
 - For **Auto-assign Public IP** list, choose **Enable** (if the subnet setting is not set to **Enable** by default).
 - Leave the rest of the settings at their defaults.
 - Choose **Next: Add Storage**.
6. On the **Step 4** page, leave the default settings, and then choose **Next: Add Tags**.
7. On the **Step 5** page, choose **Add Tag**. Under **Key** type **example.local-DC01**, and then choose **Next: Configure Security Group**.
8. On the **Step 6** page, choose **Select an existing security group**, select **AWS DS RDP Security Group** (which you previously set up in the [Base tutorial \(p. 115\)](#)), and then choose **Review and Launch** to review your instance.
9. On the **Step 7** page, review the page, and then choose **Launch**.
10. On the **Select an existing key pair or create a new key pair** dialog box, do the following:
 - Choose **Choose an existing key pair**.
 - Under **Select a key pair**, choose **AWS-DS-KP** (which you previously set up in the [Base tutorial \(p. 114\)](#)).
 - Select the **I acknowledge...** check box.
 - Choose **Launch Instances**.
11. Choose **View Instances** to return to the Amazon EC2 console and view the status of the deployment.

Promote Your Server to a Domain Controller

Before you can create trusts, you must build and deploy the first domain controller for a new forest. During this process you configure a new Active Directory forest, install DNS, and set this server to use the local DNS server for name resolution. You must reboot the server at the end of this procedure.

Note

If you want to create a domain controller in AWS that replicates with your on-premises network, you would first manually join the EC2 instance to your on-premises domain. After that you can promote the server to a domain controller.

To promote your server to a domain controller

1. In the Amazon EC2 console, choose **Instances**, select the instance you just created, and then choose **Connect**.
2. In the **Connect To Your Instance** dialog box, choose **Download Remote Desktop File**.
3. In the **Windows Security** dialog box, type your local administrator credentials for the Windows Server computer to login (for example, **administrator**). If you do not yet have the local administrator password, go back to the Amazon EC2 console, right-click on the instance, and choose **Get Windows Password**. Navigate to your AWS_DS_KP.pem file or your personal .pem key, and then choose **Decrypt Password**.
4. From the **Start** menu, choose **Server Manager**.
5. In the **Dashboard**, choose **Add Roles and Features**.
6. In the **Add Roles and Features Wizard**, choose **Next**.
7. On the **Select installation type** page, choose **Role-based or feature-based installation**, and then choose **Next**.
8. On the **Select destination server** page, make sure that the local server is selected, and then choose **Next**.
9. On the **Select server roles** page, select **Active Directory Domain Services**. In the **Add Roles and Features Wizard** dialog box, verify that the **Include management tools (if applicable)** check box is selected. Choose **Add Features**, and then choose **Next**.
10. On the **Select features** page, choose **Next**.
11. On the **Active Directory Domain Services** page, choose **Next**.
12. On the **Confirm installation selections** page, choose **Install**.
13. Once the Active Directory binaries are installed, choose **Close**.
14. When Server Manager opens, look for a flag at the top next to the word **Manage**. When this flag turns yellow, the server is ready to be promoted.
15. Choose the yellow flag, and then choose **Promote this server to a domain controller**.
16. On the **Deployment Configuration** page, choose **Add a new forest**. In **Root domain name**, type **example.local**, and then choose **Next**.
17. On the **Domain Controller Options** page, do the following:
 - In both **Forest functional level** and **Domain functional level**, choose **Windows Server 2016**.
 - Under **Specify domain controller capabilities**, verify that both **Domain Name System (DNS) server** and **Global Catalog (GC)** are selected.
 - Type and then confirm a Directory Services Restore Mode (DSRM) password. Then choose **Next**.
18. On the **DNS Options** page, ignore the warning about delegation and choose **Next**.
19. On the **Additional options** page, make sure that **EXAMPLE1** is listed as the NetBios domain name.
20. On the **Paths** page, leave the defaults, and then choose **Next**.
21. On **Review Options** page, choose **Next**. The server now checks to make sure all the prerequisites for the domain controller are satisfied. You may see some warnings displayed, but you can safely ignore them.
22. Choose **Install**. Once the installation is complete, the server reboots and then becomes a functional domain controller.

Configure Your VPC

The following three procedures guide you through the steps to configure your VPC for connectivity with AWS.

To configure your VPC outbound rules

1. In the AWS Directory Service console, make a note of the AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory ID for corp.example.com that you previously created in the [Base tutorial \(p. 116\)](#).
2. Open the Amazon VPC console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/vpc/>.
3. In the navigation pane, choose **Security Groups**.
4. Search for your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory ID. In the search results, select the item with the description **AWS created security group for d-xxxxxxx directory controllers**.

Note

This security group was automatically created when you initially created your directory.

5. Choose the **Outbound Rules** tab under that security group. Choose **Edit**, choose **Add another rule**, and then add the following values:
 - For **Type**, choose **All Traffic**.
 - For **Destination**, type **0.0.0.0/0**.
 - Leave the rest of the settings at their defaults.
 - Select **Save**.

To verify Kerberos preauthentication is enabled

1. On the **example.local** domain controller, open **Server Manager**.
2. On the **Tools** menu, choose **Active Directory Users and Computers**.
3. Navigate to the **Users** directory, right-click on any user and select **Properties**, and then choose the **Account** tab. In the **Account options** list, scroll down and ensure that **Do not require Kerberos preauthentication** is **not** selected.
4. Perform the same steps for the **corp.example.com** domain from the **corp.example.com-mgmt** instance.

To configure DNS conditional forwarders

1. First you must get some information about your AWS Managed Microsoft AD.

Sign in to the AWS Management Console and open the AWS Directory Service console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/directoryservicev2/>.
2. In the navigation pane, choose **Directories**.
3. Select the **directory ID** of your AWS Managed Microsoft AD.
4. Take note of the fully qualified domain name (FQDN), **corp.example.com**, and the DNS addresses of your directory.
5. Now, return to your **example.local** domain controller, and then open **Server Manager**.
6. On the **Tools** menu, choose **DNS**.
7. In the console tree, expand the DNS server of the domain for which you are setting up the trust, and navigate to **Conditional Forwarders**.
8. Right-click **Conditional Forwarders**, and then choose **New Conditional Forwarder**.
9. In DNS domain, type **corp.example.com**.
10. Under **IP addresses of the master servers**, choose **<Click here to add ...>**, type the first DNS address of your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory (which you made note of in the previous procedure), and then press **Enter**. Do the same for the second DNS address. After typing the DNS addresses, you might get a "timeout" or "unable to resolve" error. You can generally ignore these errors.
11. Select the **Store this conditional forwarder in Active Directory, and replicate as follows** check box. In the drop-down menu, choose **All DNS servers in this Forest**, and then choose **OK**.

Step 2: Create the Trusts

In this section, you create two separate forest trusts. One trust is created from the Active Directory domain on your EC2 instance and the other from your AWS Managed Microsoft AD in AWS.

Note

AWS Managed Microsoft AD also supports external trusts. However, for the purposes of this tutorial, you will create a two-way forest trust.

To create the trust from your EC2 domain to your AWS Managed Microsoft AD in AWS

1. Log into **example.local**.
2. Open **Server Manager** and in the console tree choose **DNS**. Take note of the IPv4 address listed for the server. You will need this in the next procedure when you create a conditional forwarder from **corp.example.com** to the **example.local** directory.
3. In the **Tools** menu, choose **Active Directory Domains and Trusts**.
4. In the console tree, right-click **example.local** and then choose **Properties**.
5. On the **Trusts** tab, choose **New Trust**, and then choose **Next**.
6. On the **Trust Name** page, type **corp.example.com**, and then choose **Next**.
7. On the **Trust Type** page, choose **Forest trust**, and then choose **Next**.
8. On the **Direction of Trust** page, choose **Two-way**, and then choose **Next**.
9. On the **Sides of Trust** page, choose **This domain only**, and then choose **Next**.
10. On the **Outgoing Trust Authentication Level** page, choose **Forest-wide authentication**, and then choose **Next**.
11. On the **Trust Password** page, type the trust password twice, and then choose **Next**. You will use this same password in the next procedure.
12. On the **Trust Selections Complete** page, review the results, and then choose **Next**.
13. On the **Trust Creation Complete** page, review the results, and then choose **Next**.
14. On the **Confirm Outgoing Trust** page, choose **No, do not confirm the outgoing trust**. Then choose **Next**.
15. On the **Confirm Incoming Trust** page, choose **No, do not confirm the incoming trust**. Then choose **Next**.
16. On the **Completing the New Trust Wizard** page, choose **Finish**.

To create the trust from your AWS Managed Microsoft AD in AWS to your EC2 domain

1. Open the AWS Directory Service console.
2. Choose the **corp.example.com** directory.
3. On the **Directory details** page, select the **Networking & security** tab.
4. In the **Trust relationships** section, choose **Actions**, and then select **Add trust relationship**.
5. In the **Add a trust relationship** dialog box, do the following:
 - For **Remote domain name**, type **example.local**.
 - For **Trust password**, type the same password that you provided in the previous procedure.
 - In **Trust direction**, select **Two-way**.
 - In **Conditional forwarder**, type the IP address of your DNS server in the **example.local** forest (which you noted in the previous procedure).
6. Choose **Add**.

Step 3: Verify the Trust

In this section, you test whether the trusts were set up successfully between AWS and Active Directory on Amazon EC2.

To verify the trust

1. Open the AWS Directory Service console.
2. Choose the **corp.example.com** directory.
3. On the **Directory details** page, select the **Networking & security** tab.
4. In the **Trust relationships** section, select the trust relationship you just created.
5. Choose **Actions**, and then choose **Verify trust relationship**.

Once the verification has completed, you should see **Verified** displayed under the **Status** column.

Congratulations on completing this tutorial! You now have a fully functional multiforest Active Directory environment from which you can begin testing various scenarios. Additional test lab tutorials are planned in 2018, so check back on occasion to see what's new.

Troubleshooting AWS Managed Microsoft AD

The following can help you troubleshoot some common issues you might encounter when creating or using your directory.

Password recovery

If a user forgets a password or is having trouble signing in to either your Simple AD or AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory, you can reset their password using either the AWS Management Console, Windows PowerShell or the AWS CLI.

For more information, see [Reset a User Password \(p. 62\)](#).

Topics

- [DNS Troubleshooting \(p. 126\)](#)
- [Linux Domain Join Errors \(p. 127\)](#)
- [Schema Extension Errors \(p. 128\)](#)
- [Trust Creation Status Reasons \(p. 130\)](#)

DNS Troubleshooting

You can audit your AWS Managed Microsoft AD DNS events, making it easier to identify and troubleshoot DNS issues. For example, if a DNS record is missing, you can use the DNS audit event log to help identify the root cause and fix the issue. You can also use DNS audit event logs to improve security by detecting and blocking requests from suspicious IP addresses.

To do that, you must be logged on with the **Admin** account or with an account that is a member of the **AWS Domain Name System Administrators** group. For more information about this group, see [What Gets Created \(p. 11\)](#).

To troubleshoot AWS Managed Microsoft AD DNS

1. Open the Amazon EC2 console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/ec2/>.

2. In the left navigation pane, choose **Instances**.
3. Locate an Amazon EC2 instance that is joined to your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory. Select the instance and then choose **Connect**.
4. Open the **Event Viewer** located in the **Administrative Tools** folder.
5. In the **Event Viewer** window, choose **Action** and then choose **Connect to Another Computer**.
6. Select **Another computer**, type one of your AWS Managed Microsoft AD DNS servers name or IP address, and choose **OK**.
7. In the left pane, navigate to **Applications and Services Logs>Microsoft>Windows>DNS-Server**, and then select **Audit**.

Linux Domain Join Errors

The following can help you troubleshoot some error messages you might encounter when joining an EC2 Linux instance to your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory.

Linux instances unable to join domain or authenticate

Ubuntu 14.04, 16.04, and 18.04 instances **must** be reverse-resolvable in the DNS before a realm can work with Microsoft AD. Otherwise you may encounter one of the following two scenarios:

Scenario 1: Ubuntu instances that are not yet joined to a realm

For Ubuntu instances that are attempting to join a realm, the `sudo realm join` command might not provide the required permissions to join the domain and might display the following error:

```
! Couldn't authenticate to active directory: SASL(-1): generic failure: GSSAPI Error: An invalid name was supplied (Success) adcli: couldn't connect to EXAMPLE.COM domain: Couldn't authenticate to active directory: SASL(-1): generic failure: GSSAPI Error: An invalid name was supplied (Success) ! Insufficient permissions to join the domain realm: Couldn't join realm: Insufficient permissions to join the domain
```

Scenario 2: Ubuntu instances that are joined to a realm

For Ubuntu instances that are already joined to a Microsoft AD domain, attempts to SSH into the instance using the domain credentials might fail with following errors:

```
$ ssh admin@EXAMPLE.COM@198.51.100
```

```
no such identity: /Users/username/.ssh/id_ed25519: No such file or directory
```

```
admin@EXAMPLE.COM@198.51.100's password:
```

```
Permission denied, please try again.
```

```
admin@EXAMPLE.COM@198.51.100's password:
```

If you login to the instance with a public key and check `/var/log/auth.log` you might see the following errors about being unable to find the user:

```
May 12 01:02:12 ip-192-0-2-0 sshd[2251]: pam_unix(sshd:auth): authentication failure; logname= uid=0 euid=0 tty=ssh ruser= rhost=203.0.113.0
```

```
May 12 01:02:12 ip-192-0-2-0 sshd[2251]: pam_ldap(sshd:auth): authentication failure; logname= uid=0 euid=0 tty=ssh ruser= rhost=203.0.113.0 user=admin@EXAMPLE.COM
```

```
May 12 01:02:12 ip-192-0-2-0 sshd[2251]: pam_ldap(sshd:auth): received for user admin@EXAMPLE.COM: 10 (User not known to the underlying authentication module)
```

May 12 01:02:14 ip-192-0-2-0 sshd[2251]: Failed password for invalid user admin@EXAMPLE.COM from 203.0.113.0 port 13344 ssh2

May 12 01:02:15 ip-192-0-2-0 sshd[2251]: Connection closed by 203.0.113.0 [preauth]

However, kinit for the user still works. For example:

```
ubuntu@ip-192-0-2-0:~$ kinit admin@EXAMPLE.COM Password for admin@EXAMPLE.COM:
ubuntu@ip-192-0-2-0:~$ klist Ticket cache: FILE:/tmp/krb5cc_1000 Default principal:
admin@EXAMPLE.COM
```

Workaround

The current recommended workaround for both of these scenarios is to disable reverse DNS in `/etc/krb5.conf` in the `[libdefaults]` section as shown below:

```
[libdefaults]
default_realm = EXAMPLE.COM
rdns = false
```

Schema Extension Errors

The following can help you troubleshoot some error messages you might encounter when extending the schema for your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory.

Referral

Error

Add error on entry starting on line 1: Referral The server side error is: 0x202b A referral was returned from the server. The extended server error is: 0000202B: RefErr: DSID-0310082F, data 0, 1 access points \tref 1: 'example.com' Number of Objects Modified: 0

Troubleshooting

Ensure that all of the distinguished name fields have the correct domain name. In the example above, `DC=example,dc=com` should be replaced with the `DistinguishedName` shown by the `cmdlet Get-ADDomain`.

Unable to Read Import File

Error

Unable to read the import file. Number of Objects Modified: 0

Troubleshooting

The imported LDIF file is empty (0 bytes). Ensure the correct file was uploaded.

Syntax Error

Error

There is a syntax error in the input file Failed on line 21. The last token starts with 'q'. Number of Objects Modified: 0

Troubleshooting

The text on line 21 is not formatted correctly. The first letter of the invalid text is **A**. Update line 21 with valid LDIF syntax. For more information about how to format the LDIF file, see [Step 1: Create Your LDIF File \(p. 83\)](#).

Attribute or Value Exists

Error

Add error on entry starting on line 1: Attribute Or Value Exists The server side error is: 0x2083 The specified value already exists. The extended server error is: 00002083: AtrErr: DSID-03151830, #1: \t0: 00002083: DSID-03151830, problem 1006 (ATT_OR_VALUE_EXISTS), data 0, Att 20019 (mayContain):len 4 Number of Objects Modified: 0

Troubleshooting

The schema change has already been applied.

No Such Attribute

Error

Add error on entry starting on line 1: No Such Attribute The server side error is: 0x2085 The attribute value cannot be removed because it is not present on the object. The extended server error is: 00002085: AtrErr: DSID-03152367, #1: \t0: 00002085: DSID-03152367, problem 1001 (NO_ATTRIBUTE_OR_VAL), data 0, Att 20019 (mayContain):len 4 Number of Objects Modified: 0

Troubleshooting

The LDIF file is trying to remove an attribute from a class, but that attribute is currently not attached to the class. Schema change was probably already applied.

Error

Add error on entry starting on line 41: No Such Attribute 0x57 The parameter is incorrect. The extended server error is: 0x208d Directory object not found. The extended server error is: "00000057: LdapErr: DSID-0C090D8A, comment: Error in attribute conversion operation, data 0, v2580" Number of Objects Modified: 0

Troubleshooting

The attribute listed on line 41 is incorrect. Double-check the spelling.

No Such Object

Error

Add error on entry starting on line 1: No Such Object The server side error is: 0x208d Directory object not found. The extended server error is: 0000208D: NameErr: DSID-03100238, problem 2001 (NO_OBJECT), data 0, best match of: 'CN=Schema,CN=Configuration,DC=example,DC=com' Number of Objects Modified: 0

Troubleshooting

The object referenced by the distinguished name (DN) does not exist.

Trust Creation Status Reasons

When trust creation fails, the status message contains additional information. Here's some help understanding what those messages mean.

Access is denied

Access was denied when trying to create the trust. Either the trust password is incorrect or the remote domain's security settings do not allow a trust to be configured. To resolve this problem, try the following:

- Verify that you are using the same trust password that you used when creating the corresponding trust on the remote domain.
- Verify that your domain security settings allow for trust creation.
- Verify that your local security policy is set correctly. Specifically check `Local Security Policy > Local Policies > Security Options > Network access: Named Pipes that can be accessed anonymously` and ensure that it contains at least the following three named pipes:
 - netlogon
 - samr
 - lsarpc

Note

By default, `Network access: Named Pipes that can be accessed anonymously` is not set and will display `Not Defined`. This is normal, as the domain controller's effective default settings for `Network access: Named Pipes that can be accessed anonymously` is `netlogon, samr, lsarpc`.

The specified domain name does not exist or could not be contacted

To solve this problem, ensure the security group settings for your domain and access control list (ACL) for your VPC are correct and you have accurately entered the information for your conditional forwarder. For more information about security requirements, see [When to Create a Trust Relationship \(p. 64\)](#).

If this does not solve the issue, it is possible that information for a previously created conditional forwarder has been cached, preventing the creation of a new trust. Please wait several minutes and then try creating the trust and conditional forwarder again.

General tool for testing trusts

The [DirectoryServicePortTest](#) testing tool can be helpful when troubleshooting trust creation issues between AWS Managed Microsoft AD and on-premises Active Directory. For an example on how the tool can be used, see [Test your AD Connector \(p. 135\)](#).

Active Directory Connector

AD Connector is a directory gateway with which you can redirect directory requests to your on-premises Microsoft Active Directory without caching any information in the cloud. AD Connector comes in two sizes, small and large. You can spread application loads across multiple AD Connectors to scale to your performance needs. There are no enforced user or connection limits.

Once set up, AD Connector offers the following benefits:

- Your end users and IT administrators can use their existing corporate credentials to log on to AWS applications such as Amazon WorkSpaces, Amazon WorkDocs, or Amazon WorkMail.
- You can manage AWS resources like Amazon EC2 instances or Amazon S3 buckets through IAM role-based access to the AWS Management Console.
- You can consistently enforce existing security policies (such as password expiration, password history, and account lockouts) whether users or IT administrators are accessing resources in your on-premises infrastructure or in the AWS Cloud.
- You can use AD Connector to enable multi-factor authentication by integrating with your existing RADIUS-based MFA infrastructure to provide an additional layer of security when users access AWS applications.

Continue reading the topics in this section to learn how to connect to a directory and make the most of AD Connector features.

Topics

- [Getting Started with AD Connector \(p. 131\)](#)
- [How To Administer AD Connector \(p. 142\)](#)
- [Best Practices for AD Connector \(p. 150\)](#)
- [Limits for AD Connector \(p. 152\)](#)
- [Application Compatibility Policy for AD Connector \(p. 153\)](#)
- [Troubleshooting AD Connector \(p. 153\)](#)

Getting Started with AD Connector

With AD Connector you can connect AWS Directory Service to your existing enterprise directory. When connected to your existing directory, all of your directory data remains on your domain controllers. AWS Directory Service does not replicate any of your directory data.

Topics

- [AD Connector Prerequisites \(p. 131\)](#)
- [Create an AD Connector \(p. 141\)](#)
- [What Gets Created \(p. 142\)](#)

AD Connector Prerequisites

To connect to your existing directory with AD Connector, you need the following:

VPC

Set up a VPC with the following:

- At least two subnets. Each of the subnets must be in a different Availability Zone.
- The VPC must be connected to your existing network through a virtual private network (VPN) connection or AWS Direct Connect.
- The VPC must have default hardware tenancy.

AWS Directory Service uses a two VPC structure. The EC2 instances which make up your directory run outside of your AWS account, and are managed by AWS. They have two network adapters, `ETH0` and `ETH1`. `ETH0` is the management adapter, and exists outside of your account. `ETH1` is created within your account.

The management IP range of your directory's `ETH0` network is chosen programmatically to ensure it does not conflict with the VPC where your directory is deployed. This IP range can be in either of the following pairs (as Directories run in two subnets):

- 10.0.1.0/24 & 10.0.2.0/24
- 192.168.1.0/24 & 192.168.2.0/24

We avoid conflicts by checking the first octet of the `ETH1` CIDR. If it starts with a 10, then we choose a 192.168.0.0/16 VPC with 192.168.1.0/24 and 192.168.2.0/24 subnets. If the first octet is anything else other than a 10 we choose a 10.0.0.0/16 VPC with 10.0.1.0/24 and 10.0.2.0/24 subnets.

The selection algorithm does not include routes on your VPC. It is therefore possible to have an IP routing conflict result from this scenario.

For more information, see the following topics in the *Amazon VPC User Guide*:

- [What is Amazon VPC?](#)
- [Subnets in your VPC](#)
- [Adding a Hardware Virtual Private Gateway to Your VPC](#)

For more information about AWS Direct Connect, see the [AWS Direct Connect User Guide](#).

Existing Active Directory

You'll need to connect to an existing network with an Active Directory domain. The functional level of this domain must be `Windows Server 2003` or higher. AD Connector also supports connecting to a domain hosted on an Amazon EC2 instance.

Note

AD Connector does not support Read-only domain controllers (RODC) when used in combination with the Amazon EC2 domain-join feature.

Service account

You must have credentials for a service account in the existing directory which has been delegated the following privileges:

- Read users and groups - Required
- Join computers to the domain - Required
- Create computer objects - Required only when using Seamless Domain Join and Amazon WorkSpaces

For more information, see [Delegate privileges to your service account \(p. 134\)](#).

User permissions

All Active Directory users must have permissions to read their own attributes. Specifically the following attributes:

- `GivenName`

- SurName
- Mail
- SamAccountName
- UserPrincipalName
- UserAccountControl
- MemberOf

By default, Active Directory users do have read permission to these attributes. However, Administrators can alter these permissions over time so you might want to verify your users have these read permissions prior to setting up AD Connector for the first time.

IP addresses

Get the IP addresses of two DNS servers or domain controllers in your existing directory.

AD Connector obtains the `_ldap._tcp.<DnsDomainName>` and `_kerberos._tcp.<DnsDomainName>` SRV records from these servers when connecting to your directory, so these servers must contain these SRV records. The AD Connector attempts to find a common domain controller that will provide both LDAP and Kerberos services, so these SRV records must include at least one common domain controller. For more information about SRV records, go to [SRV Resource Records](#) on Microsoft TechNet.

Ports for subnets

For AD Connector to redirect directory requests to your existing Active Directory domain controllers, the firewall for your existing network must have the following ports open to the CIDRs for both subnets in your Amazon VPC.

- TCP/UDP 53 - DNS
- TCP/UDP 88 - Kerberos authentication
- TCP/UDP 389 - LDAP

These are the minimum ports that are needed before AD Connector can connect to your directory. Your specific configuration may require additional ports be open.

Note

If the DNS servers or Domain Controller servers for your existing Active Directory Domain are within the VPC, the security groups associated with those servers must have the above ports open to the CIDRs for both subnets in the VPC.

For additional port requirements, see [AD and AD DS Port Requirements](#) on Microsoft TechNet.

Kerberos preauthentication

Your user accounts must have Kerberos preauthentication enabled. For detailed instructions on how to enable this setting, see [Ensure That Kerberos Pre-authentication Is Enabled \(p. 73\)](#). For general information about this setting, go to [Preauthentication](#) on Microsoft TechNet.

Encryption types

AD Connector supports the following encryption types when authenticating to your Active Directory domain controllers:

- AES-256-HMAC
- AES-128-HMAC
- RC4-HMAC

Multi-Factor Authentication Prerequisites

To support multi-factor authentication with your AD Connector directory, you need the following:

- A [Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service](#) (RADIUS) server in your existing network that has two client endpoints. The RADIUS client endpoints have the following requirements:
 - To create the endpoints, you need the IP addresses of the AWS Directory Service servers. These IP addresses can be obtained from the **Directory IP Address** field of your directory details.
 - Both RADIUS endpoints must use the same shared secret code.
- Your existing network must allow inbound traffic over the default RADIUS server port (1812) from the AWS Directory Service servers.
- The usernames between your RADIUS server and your existing directory must be identical.

For more information about using AD Connector with MFA, see [Enable Multi-Factor Authentication for AD Connector](#) (p. 143).

Delegate privileges to your service account

To connect to your existing directory, you must have the credentials for your AD Connector service account in the existing directory that has been delegated certain privileges. While members of the **Domain Admins** group have sufficient privileges to connect to the directory, as a best practice, you should use a service account that only has the minimum privileges necessary to connect to the directory. The following procedure demonstrates how to create a new group called **Connectors**, delegate the necessary privileges that are needed to connect AWS Directory Service to this group, and then add a new service account to this group.

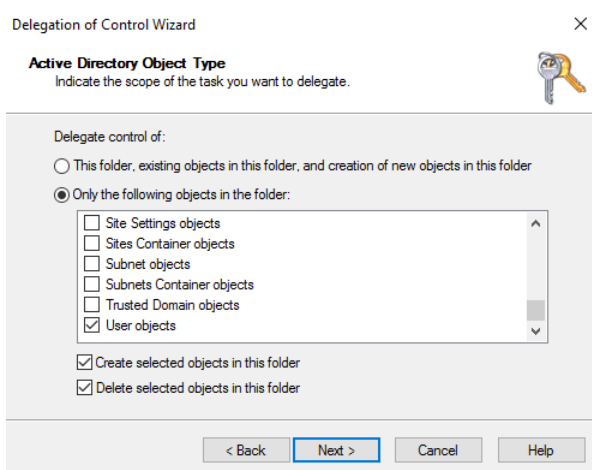
This procedure must be performed on a machine that is joined to your directory and has the **Active Directory User and Computers** MMC snap-in installed. You must also be logged in as a domain administrator.

To delegate privileges to your service account

1. Open **Active Directory User and Computers** and select your domain root in the navigation tree.
2. In the list in the left-hand pane, right-click **Users**, select **New**, and then select **Group**.
3. In the **New Object - Group** dialog box, enter the following and click **OK**.

Field	Value/Selection
Group name	Connectors
Group scope	Global
Group type	Security

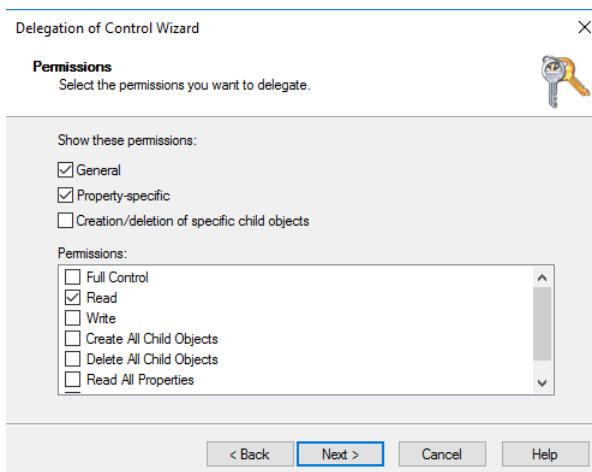
4. In the **Active Directory User and Computers** navigation tree, select your domain root. In the menu, select **Action**, and then **Delegate Control**.
5. On the **Delegation of Control Wizard** page, click **Next**, then click **Add**.
6. In the **Select Users, Computers, or Groups** dialog box, enter **Connectors** and click **OK**. If more than one object is found, select the **Connectors** group created above. Click **Next**.
7. On the **Tasks to Delegate** page, select **Create a custom task to delegate**, and then choose **Next**.
8. Select **Only the following objects in the folder**, and then select **Computer objects** and **User objects**.
9. Select **Create selected objects in this folder** and **Delete selected objects in this folder**. Then choose **Next**.



10. Select **Read**, and then choose **Next**.

Note

If you will be using Seamless Domain Join or Amazon WorkSpaces, you must also enable **Write** permissions so that AWS Managed Microsoft AD can create computer objects.



11. Verify the information on the **Completing the Delegation of Control Wizard** page, and click **Finish**.
12. Create a user account with a strong password and add that user to the `Connectors` group. This user will be known as your AD Connector service account and since it is now a member of the `Connectors` group it now has sufficient privileges to connect AWS Directory Service to the directory.

Test your AD Connector

For AD Connector to connect to your existing directory, the firewall for your existing network must have certain ports open to the CIDRs for both subnets in the VPC. To test if these conditions are met, perform the following steps:

To test the connection

1. Launch a Windows instance in the VPC and connect to it over RDP. The instance must be a member of your existing domain. The remaining steps are performed on this VPC instance.
2. Download and unzip the [DirectoryServicePortTest](#) test application. The source code and Visual Studio project files are included so you can modify the test application if desired.

Note

This script is not supported on Windows Server 2003 or older operating systems.

3. From a Windows command prompt, run the **DirectoryServicePortTest** test application with the following options:

Note

The DirectoryServicePortTest test application can only be used when the domain and forest functional levels are set to Windows Server 2012 R2 and below.

```
DirectoryServicePortTest.exe -d <domain_name> -ip <server_IP_address> -tcp "53,88,389"  
-udp "53,88,389"
```

<domain_name>

The fully qualified domain name. This is used to test the forest and domain functional levels. If you exclude the domain name, the functional levels won't be tested.

<server_IP_address>

The IP address of a domain controller in your existing domain. The ports will be tested against this IP address. If you exclude the IP address, the ports won't be tested.

This test app determines if the necessary ports are open from the VPC to your domain, and also verifies the minimum forest and domain functional levels.

The output will be similar to the following:

```
Testing forest functional level.  
Forest Functional Level = Windows2008R2Forest : PASSED  
  
Testing domain functional level.  
Domain Functional Level = Windows2008R2Domain : PASSED  
  
Testing required TCP ports to <server_IP_address>:  
Checking TCP port 53: PASSED  
Checking TCP port 88: PASSED  
Checking TCP port 389: PASSED  
  
Testing required UDP ports to <server_IP_address>:  
Checking UDP port 53: PASSED  
Checking UDP port 88: PASSED  
Checking UDP port 389: PASSED
```

The following is the source code for the **DirectoryServicePortTest** application.

```
/*  
Copyright 2010-2019 Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.  
  
This file is licensed under the Apache License, Version 2.0 (the "License").  
You may not use this file except in compliance with the License. A copy of  
the License is located at  
  
http://aws.amazon.com/apache2.0/  
  
This file is distributed on an "AS IS" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR  
CONDITIONS OF ANY KIND, either express or implied. See the License for the  
specific language governing permissions and limitations under the License.  
*/  
using System;
```

```
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.IO;
using System.Linq;
using System.Net;
using System.Net.Sockets;
using System.Text;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using System.DirectoryServices.ActiveDirectory;
using System.Threading;
using System.DirectoryServices.AccountManagement;
using System.DirectoryServices;
using System.Security.Authentication;
using System.Security.AccessControl;
using System.Security.Principal;

namespace DirectoryServicePortTest
{
    class Program
    {
        private static List<int> _tcpPorts;
        private static List<int> _udpPorts;

        private static string _domain = "";
        private static IPAddress _ipAddr = null;

        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            if (ParseArgs(args))
            {
                try
                {
                    if (_domain.Length > 0)
                    {
                        try
                        {
                            TestForestFunctionalLevel();

                            TestDomainFunctionalLevel();
                        }
                        catch (ActiveDirectoryObjectNotFoundException)
                        {
                            Console.WriteLine("The domain {0} could not be found.\n",
                                _domain);
                        }
                    }

                    if (null != _ipAddr)
                    {
                        if (_tcpPorts.Count > 0)
                        {
                            TestTcpPorts(_tcpPorts);
                        }

                        if (_udpPorts.Count > 0)
                        {
                            TestUdpPorts(_udpPorts);
                        }
                    }
                }
                catch (AuthenticationException ex)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
                }
            }
            else
            {

```

```

        PrintUsage();
    }

    Console.WriteLine("Press <enter> to continue.");
    Console.ReadLine();
}

static void PrintUsage()
{
    string currentApp =
        Path.GetFileName(System.Reflection.Assembly.GetExecutingAssembly().Location);
    Console.WriteLine("Usage: {0} \n-d <domain> \n-ip \"<server IP address>\"
\n[-tcp \"<tcp_port1>,<tcp_port2>,etc\"] \n[-udp \"<udp_port1>,<udp_port2>,etc\"]",
currentApp);
}

static bool ParseArgs(string[] args)
{
    bool fReturn = false;
    string ipAddress = "";

    try
    {
        _tcpPorts = new List<int>();
        _udpPorts = new List<int>();

        for (int i = 0; i < args.Length; i++)
        {
            string arg = args[i];

            if ("-tcp" == arg | "/tcp" == arg)
            {
                i++;
                string portList = args[i];
                _tcpPorts = ParsePortList(portList);
            }

            if ("-udp" == arg | "/udp" == arg)
            {
                i++;
                string portList = args[i];
                _udpPorts = ParsePortList(portList);
            }

            if ("-d" == arg | "/d" == arg)
            {
                i++;
                _domain = args[i];
            }

            if ("-ip" == arg | "/ip" == arg)
            {
                i++;
                ipAddress = args[i];
            }
        }
    }
    catch (ArgumentOutOfRangeException)
    {
        return false;
    }

    if (_domain.Length > 0 || ipAddress.Length > 0)
    {
        fReturn = true;
    }
}

```

```

        if (ipAddress.Length > 0)
        {
            _ipAddr = IPAddress.Parse(ipAddress);
        }

        return fReturn;
    }

    static List<int> ParsePortList(string portList)
    {
        List<int> ports = new List<int>();

        char[] separators = {',', ' ', ':'};

        string[] portStrings = portList.Split(separators);
        foreach (string portString in portStrings)
        {
            try
            {
                ports.Add(Convert.ToInt32(portString));
            }
            catch (FormatException)
            {
            }
        }

        return ports;
    }

    static void TestForestFunctionalLevel()
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Testing forest functional level.");

        DirectoryContext dirContext = new DirectoryContext(DirectoryContextType.Forest,
            _domain, null, null);
        Forest forestContext = Forest.GetForest(dirContext);

        Console.WriteLine("Forest Functional Level = {0} : ", forestContext.ForestMode);

        if (forestContext.ForestMode >= ForestMode.Windows2003Forest)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("PASSED");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine("FAILED");
        }

        Console.WriteLine();
    }

    static void TestDomainFunctionalLevel()
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Testing domain functional level.");

        DirectoryContext dirContext = new DirectoryContext(DirectoryContextType.Domain,
            _domain, null, null);
        Domain domainObject = Domain.GetDomain(dirContext);

        Console.WriteLine("Domain Functional Level = {0} : ", domainObject.DomainMode);

        if (domainObject.DomainMode >= DomainMode.Windows2003Domain)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("PASSED");
        }
    }

```



```
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine("FAILED");
        }

        Console.WriteLine();
    }

    static List<int> TestTcpPorts(List<int> portList)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Testing TCP ports to {0}:", _ipAddr.ToString());

        List<int> failedPorts = new List<int>();

        foreach (int port in portList)
        {
            Console.Write("Checking TCP port {0}: ", port);

            TcpClient tcpClient = new TcpClient();

            try
            {
                tcpClient.Connect(_ipAddr, port);

                tcpClient.Close();
                Console.WriteLine("PASSED");
            }
            catch (SocketException)
            {
                failedPorts.Add(port);
                Console.WriteLine("FAILED");
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine();

        return failedPorts;
    }

    static List<int> TestUdpPorts(List<int> portList)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Testing UDP ports to {0}:", _ipAddr.ToString());

        List<int> failedPorts = new List<int>();

        foreach (int port in portList)
        {
            Console.Write("Checking UDP port {0}: ", port);

            UdpClient udpClient = new UdpClient();

            try
            {
                udpClient.Connect(_ipAddr, port);
                udpClient.Close();
                Console.WriteLine("PASSED");
            }
            catch (SocketException)
            {
                failedPorts.Add(port);
                Console.WriteLine("FAILED");
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine();
    }
```

```
        return failedPorts;
    }
}
}
```

Create an AD Connector

To connect to your existing directory with AD Connector, perform the following steps. Before starting this procedure, make sure you have completed the prerequisites identified in [AD Connector Prerequisites \(p. 131\)](#).

To connect with AD Connector

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, choose **Directories** and then choose **Set up directory**.
2. On the **Select directory type** page, choose **AD Connector**, and then choose **Next**.
3. On the **Enter AD Connector information** page, provide the following information:

Directory size

Choose from either the **Small** or **Large** size option. For more information about sizes, see [Active Directory Connector \(p. 131\)](#).

Directory description

An optional description for the directory.

4. On the **Choose VPC and subnets** page, provide the following information, and then choose **Next**.

VPC

The VPC for the directory.

Subnets

Choose the subnets for the domain controllers. The two subnets must be in different Availability Zones.

5. On the **Connect to AD** page, provide the following information:

Directory DNS name

The fully qualified name of your existing directory, such as `corp.example.com`.

Directory NetBIOS name

The short name of your existing directory, such as `CORP`.

DNS IP addresses

The IP address of at least one DNS server in your existing directory. These servers must be accessible from each subnet specified in the next section.

Service account username

The user name of a user in the existing directory. For more information about this account, see the [AD Connector Prerequisites \(p. 131\)](#).

Service account password

The password for the existing user account.

Confirm password

Retype the password for the existing user account.

6. On the **Review & create** page, review the directory information and make any necessary changes. When the information is correct, choose **Create directory**. It takes several minutes for the directory to be created. Once created, the **Status** value changes to **Active**.

What Gets Created

When you create an AD Connector, AWS Directory Service automatically associates an elastic network interface with each of your domain controllers. Each of these network interfaces are essential to preserve connectivity between EC2 and AWS Directory Service and should never be deleted. You can identify all network interfaces reserved for use with AWS Directory Service by the description: "AWS created network interface for directory *directory-id*". For more information, see [Elastic Network Interfaces](#) in the Amazon EC2 User Guide.

How To Administer AD Connector

This section lists all of the procedures for operating and maintaining an AD Connector environment.

Topics

- [Secure Your AD Connector Directory](#) (p. 142)
- [Monitor Your AD Connector Directory](#) (p. 144)
- [Join an EC2 Instance to Your AD Connector Directory](#) (p. 146)
- [Maintain Your AD Connector Directory](#) (p. 148)
- [Update the DNS Address for Your AD Connector](#) (p. 149)

Secure Your AD Connector Directory

This section describes considerations for securing your AD Connector environment.

Topics

- [Update Your AD Connector Service Account Credentials in AWS Directory Service](#) (p. 142)
- [Enable Multi-Factor Authentication for AD Connector](#) (p. 143)

Update Your AD Connector Service Account Credentials in AWS Directory Service

The AD Connector credentials you provide in AWS Directory Service represent the service account that is used to access your existing on-premises directory. You can modify the service account credentials in AWS Directory Service by performing the following steps.

Note

If single sign-on is enabled for the directory, AWS Directory Service must transfer the service principal name (SPN) from the current service account to the new service account. If the current service account does not have permission to delete the SPN or the new service account does not have permission to add the SPN, you are prompted for the credentials of a directory account that does have permission to perform both actions. These credentials are only used to transfer the SPN and are not stored by the service.

To update your AD Connector service account credentials in AWS Directory Service

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, select **Directories**.
2. Choose the directory ID link for your directory.

3. On the **Directory details** page, in the **Connector account credentials** section, choose **Update**.
4. In the **Update service account credentials** dialog, type the new user name and password, and then choose **Update Directory**.

Enable Multi-Factor Authentication for AD Connector

You can enable multi-factor authentication for AD Connector when you have Active Directory running on-premises or in EC2 instances. For more information about using multi-factor authentication with AWS Directory Service, see [AD Connector Prerequisites \(p. 131\)](#).

Note

Multi-factor authentication is not available for Simple AD. However, MFA can be enabled for your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory. For more information, see [Enable Multi-Factor Authentication for AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 24\)](#).

To enable multi-factor authentication for AD Connector

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, select **Directories**.
2. Choose the directory ID link for your AD Connector directory.
3. On the **Directory details** page, in the **Multi-factor authentication** section, choose **Actions**, and then choose **Enable**.
4. On the **Enable multi-factor authentication (MFA)** page, provide the following values:

Display label

Provide a label name.

RADIUS server DNS name or IP addresses

The IP addresses of your RADIUS server endpoints, or the IP address of your RADIUS server load balancer. You can enter multiple IP addresses by separating them with a comma (e.g., 192.0.0.0, 192.0.0.12).

Note

RADIUS MFA is applicable only to authenticate access to the AWS Management Console, or to Amazon Enterprise applications and services such as Amazon WorkSpaces, Amazon QuickSight, or Amazon Chime. It does not provide MFA to Windows workloads running on EC2 instances, or for signing into an EC2 instance. AWS Directory Service does not support RADIUS Challenge/Response authentication. Users must have their MFA code at the time they enter their username and password. Alternatively, you must use a solution that performs MFA out-of-band such as SMS text verification for the user. In out-of-band MFA solutions, you must make sure you set the RADIUS time-out value appropriately for your solution. When using an out-of-band MFA solution, the sign-in page will prompt the user for an MFA code. In this case, the best practice is for users to enter their password in both the password field and the MFA field.

Port

The port that your RADIUS server is using for communications. Your on-premises network must allow inbound traffic over the default RADIUS server port (UDP:1812) from the AWS Directory Service servers.

Shared secret code

The shared secret code that was specified when your RADIUS endpoints were created.

Confirm shared secret code

Confirm the shared secret code for your RADIUS endpoints.

Protocol

Select the protocol that was specified when your RADIUS endpoints were created.

Server timeout (in seconds)

The amount of time, in seconds, to wait for the RADIUS server to respond. This must be a value between 1 and 50.

Max RADIUS request retries

The number of times that communication with the RADIUS server is attempted. This must be a value between 0 and 10.

Multi-factor authentication is available when the **RADIUS Status** changes to **Enabled**.

5. Choose **Enable**.

Monitor Your AD Connector Directory

You can monitor your AD Connector directory with the following methods:

Topics

- [Understanding Your Directory Status \(p. 144\)](#)
- [Configure Directory Status Notifications \(p. 145\)](#)

Understanding Your Directory Status

The following are the various statuses for a directory.

Active

The directory is operating normally. No issues have been detected by the AWS Directory Service for your directory.

Creating

The directory is currently being created. Directory creation typically takes between 5 to 30 minutes but may vary depending on the system load.

Deleted

The directory has been deleted. All resources for the directory have been released. Once a directory enters this state, it cannot be recovered.

Deleting

The directory is currently being deleted. The directory will remain in this state until it has been completely deleted. Once a directory enters this state, the delete operation cannot be cancelled, and the directory cannot be recovered.

Failed

The directory could not be created. Please delete this directory. If this problem persists, please contact the [AWS Support Center](#).

Impaired

The directory is running in a degraded state. One or more issues have been detected, and not all directory operations may be working at full operational capacity. There are many potential reasons for the directory being in this state. These include normal operational maintenance activity such

as patching or EC2 instance rotation, temporary hot spotting by an application on one of your domain controllers, or changes you made to your network that inadvertently disrupt directory communications. For more information, see either [Troubleshooting AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 126\)](#), [Troubleshooting AD Connector \(p. 153\)](#), [Troubleshooting Simple AD \(p. 200\)](#). For normal maintenance related issues, AWS resolves these issues within 40 minutes. If after reviewing the troubleshooting topic, your directory is in an Impaired state longer than 40 minutes, we recommend that you contact the [AWS Support Center](#).

Important

Do not restore a snapshot while a directory is in an Impaired state. It is rare that snapshot restore is necessary to resolve impairments. For more information, see [Snapshot or Restore Your Directory \(p. 88\)](#).

Inoperable

The directory is not functional. All directory endpoints have reported issues.

Requested

A request to create your directory is currently pending.

RestoreFailed

Restoring the directory from a snapshot failed. Please retry the restore operation. If this continues, try a different snapshot, or contact the [AWS Support Center](#).

Restoring

The directory is currently being restored from an automatic or manual snapshot. Restoring from a snapshot typically takes several minutes, depending on the size of the directory data in the snapshot.

For more information, see [Simple AD Directory Status Reasons \(p. 201\)](#).

Configure Directory Status Notifications

Using Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS), you can receive email or text (SMS) messages when the status of your directory changes. You get notified if your directory goes from an Active status to an [Impaired or Inoperable status](#). You also receive a notification when the directory returns to an Active status.

How It Works

Amazon SNS uses “topics” to collect and distribute messages. Each topic has one or more subscribers who receive the messages that have been published to that topic. Using the steps below you can add AWS Directory Service as publisher to an Amazon SNS topic. When AWS Directory Service detects a change in your directory’s status, it publishes a message to that topic, which is then sent to the topic’s subscribers.

You can associate multiple directories as publishers to a single topic. You can also add directory status messages to topics that you’ve previously created in Amazon SNS. You have detailed control over who can publish to and subscribe to a topic. For complete information about Amazon SNS, see [What is Amazon SNS?](#).

To enable SNS messaging for your directory

1. Sign in to the AWS Management Console and open the AWS Directory Service console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/directoryservicev2/>.
2. On the **Directories** page, choose your directory ID.
3. Select the **Maintenance** tab.
4. In the **Directory monitoring** section, choose **Actions**, and then select **Create notification**.

5. On the **Create notification** page, select **Choose a notification type**, and then choose **Create a new notification**. Alternatively, if you already have an existing SNS topic, you can choose **Associate existing SNS topic** to send status messages from this directory to that topic.

Note

If you choose **Create a new notification** but then use the same topic name for an SNS topic that already exists, Amazon SNS does not create a new topic, but just adds the new subscription information to the existing topic.

If you choose **Associate existing SNS topic**, you will only be able to choose an SNS topic that is in the same region as the directory.

6. Choose the **Recipient type** and enter the **Recipient** contact information. If you enter a phone number for SMS, use numbers only. Do not include dashes, spaces, or parentheses.
7. (Optional) Provide a name for your topic and an SNS display name. The display name is a short name up to 10 characters that is included in all SMS messages from this topic. When using the SMS option, the display name is required.

Note

If you are logged in using an IAM user or role that has only the [DirectoryServiceFullAccess](#) managed policy, your topic name must start with "DirectoryMonitoring". If you'd like to further customize your topic name you'll need additional privileges for SNS.

8. Choose **Create**.

If you want to designate additional SNS subscribers, such as an additional email address, Amazon SQS queues or AWS Lambda, you can do this from the Amazon SNS console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/sns/v3/home>.

To remove directory status messages from a topic

1. Sign in to the AWS Management Console and open the AWS Directory Service console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/directoryservicev2/>.
2. On the **Directories** page, choose your directory ID.
3. Select the **Maintenance** tab.
4. In the **Directory monitoring** section, select an SNS topic name in the list, choose **Actions**, and then select **Remove**.
5. Choose **Remove**.

This removes your directory as a publisher to the selected SNS topic. If you want to delete the entire topic, you can do this from the Amazon SNS console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/sns/v3/home>.

Note

Before deleting an Amazon SNS topic using the SNS console, you should ensure that a directory is not sending status messages to that topic.

If you delete an Amazon SNS topic using the SNS console, this change will not immediately be reflected within the Directory Services console. You would only be notified the next time a directory publishes a notification to the deleted topic, in which case you would see an updated status on the directory's **Monitoring** tab indicating the topic could not be found.

Therefore, to avoid missing important directory status messages, before deleting any topic that receives messages from AWS Directory Service, associate your directory with a different Amazon SNS topic.

Join an EC2 Instance to Your AD Connector Directory

You can seamlessly join an EC2 instance to your directory domain when the instance is launched using AWS Systems Manager. For more information, see [Seamlessly Joining a Windows Instance to an AWS Directory Service Domain](#) in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide for Windows Instances*.

If you need to manually join an EC2 instance to your domain, you must launch the instance in the proper region and security group or subnet, then join the instance to the domain.

To be able to connect remotely to these instances, you must have IP connectivity to the instances from the network you are connecting from. In most cases, this requires that an internet gateway be attached to your VPC and that the instance has a public IP address.

Topics

- [Seamlessly Join a Windows EC2 Instance \(p. 147\)](#)

Seamlessly Join a Windows EC2 Instance

This procedure seamlessly joins a Windows EC2 instance to your AD Connector directory.

To seamlessly join a Windows EC2 instance

1. Sign in to the AWS Management Console and open the Amazon EC2 console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/ec2/>.
2. From the region selector in the navigation bar, choose the same region as the existing directory.
3. Choose **Launch Instance**.
4. On the **Step 1** page, choose **Select** for the appropriate AMI.
5. On the **Step 2** page, select the appropriate instance type, and then choose **Next: Configure Instance Details**.
6. On the **Step 3** page, do the following, and then choose **Next: Add Storage**:
 1. For **Network**, choose the VPC that your directory was created in.
 2. For **Subnet**, choose one of the public subnets in your VPC. The subnet that you choose must have all external traffic routed to an internet gateway. If this is not the case, you won't be able to connect to the instance remotely.
 3. For **Auto-assign Public IP**, choose **Enable**.

For more information about public and private IP addressing, see [Amazon EC2 Instance IP Addressing](#) in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide for Windows Instances*.

4. For **Domain join directory**, choose your domain from the list.

Note

This option is only available for Windows instances. Linux instances must be manually joined to the directory as explained in [Manually Join a Linux Instance \(p. 49\)](#).

5. For **IAM role**, do one of the following:

Select an IAM role that has the AWS managed policies **AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore** and **AmazonSSMDirectoryServiceAccess** attached to it.

-or-

If you haven't created an IAM role that has the **AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore** and **AmazonSSMDirectoryServiceAccess** managed policies attached to it, choose the **Create new IAM role** link, and then do the following:

- a. Choose **Create role**.
- b. Under **Select type of trusted entity**, choose **AWS service**.
- c. Under **Choose the service that this role will use**, in the full list of services, choose **EC2**.
- d. Under **Select your use case**, choose **EC2**, and then choose **Next: Permissions**.
- e. In the list of policies, select the **AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore** and **AmazonSSMDirectoryServiceAccess** policies. (To filter the list, type **SSM** in the search box.)

Note

AmazonSSMDirectoryServiceAccess provides the permissions to join instances to an Active Directory managed by AWS Directory Service.

AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore provides the minimum permissions necessary to use the Systems Manager service. For more information about creating a role with these permissions, and for information about other permissions and policies you can assign to your IAM role, see [Create an IAM Instance Profile for Systems Manager](#) in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- f. Choose **Next: Tags**.
- g. (Optional) Add one or more tag key-value pairs to organize, track, or control access for this role, and then choose **Next: Review**.
- h. For **Role name**, enter a name for your new role, such as **EC2DomainJoin** or another name that you prefer.
- i. (Optional) For **Role description**, enter a description.
- j. Choose **Create role**.
- k. Go back to the **Step 3** page. For **IAM role**, choose the refresh icon next to **IAM role**. Your new role should be visible in the menu. Choose it and leave the rest of the settings on this page with their default values, and then choose **Next: Add Storage**.
7. On both the **Step 4** and **Step 5** pages, leave the default settings or make changes as needed, and then choose the **Next** buttons.
8. On the **Step 6** page, select a security group for the instance that has been configured to allow remote access to the instance from your network, and then choose **Review and Launch**.
9. On the **Step 7** page, choose **Launch**, select a key pair, and then choose **Launch Instance**.

Maintain Your AD Connector Directory

This section describes how to maintain common administrative tasks for your AD Connector environment.

Topics

- [Delete Your Directory](#) (p. 148)
- [View Directory Information](#) (p. 149)

Delete Your Directory

When a Simple AD or AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory directory is deleted, all of the directory data and snapshots are deleted and cannot be recovered. After the directory is deleted, all instances that are joined to the directory remain intact. You cannot, however, use your directory credentials to log in to these instances. You need to log in to these instances with a user account that is local to the instance.

When an AD Connector directory is deleted, your on-premises directory remains intact. All instances that are joined to the directory also remain intact and remain joined to your on-premises directory. You can still use your directory credentials to log in to these instances.

To delete a directory

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, select **Directories**.
2. Ensure that no AWS applications are enabled for the directory.
 - a. On the **Directories** page, choose your directory ID.

- b. On the **Directory details** page, select the **Application management** tab. In the **AWS apps & services** section, you see which AWS applications are enabled for your directory.
 - To disable Amazon WorkSpaces, you must deregister the service from the directory in the Amazon WorkSpaces console. For more information, see [Deregistering From a Directory](#) in the *Amazon WorkSpaces Administration Guide*.
 - To disable Amazon WorkSpaces Application Manager, you must remove all application assignments in the Amazon WAM console. For more information, see [Removing All Application Assignments](#) in the *Amazon WAM Administration Guide*.
 - To disable Amazon WorkDocs, you must delete the Amazon WorkDocs site in the Amazon WorkDocs console. For more information, see [Delete a Site](#) in the *Amazon WorkDocs Administration Guide*.
 - To disable Amazon WorkMail, you must remove the Amazon WorkMail organization in the Amazon WorkMail console. For more information, see [Remove an Organization](#) in the *Amazon WorkMail Administrator Guide*.
 - Disable AWS Management Console access.
 - To disable Amazon Relational Database Service, you must remove the Amazon RDS instance from the domain. For more information, see [Managing a DB Instance in a Domain](#) in the *Amazon RDS User Guide*.
 - To disable Amazon QuickSight, you must unsubscribe from Amazon QuickSight. For more information, see [Closing Your Amazon QuickSight Account](#) in the *Amazon QuickSight User Guide*.
 - To disable Amazon Connect, you must delete the Amazon Connect Instance. For more information, see [Deleting an Amazon Connect Instance](#) in the *Amazon Connect Administration Guide*.

Note

If you are using AWS Single Sign-On and have previously connected it to the AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory you plan to delete, you must first disconnect the directory from AWS SSO before you can delete it. For more information, see [Disconnect a Directory](#) in the *AWS SSO User Guide*.

3. In the navigation pane, choose **Directories**.
4. Select only the directory to be deleted and click **Delete**. It takes several minutes for the directory to be deleted. When the directory has been deleted, it is removed from your directory list.

View Directory Information

You can view detailed information about a directory.

To view detailed directory information

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, select **Directories**.
2. Click the directory ID link for your directory. Information about the directory is displayed in the **Directory details** page.

For more information about the **Status** field, see [Understanding Your Directory Status \(p. 32\)](#).

Update the DNS Address for Your AD Connector

Use the following steps to update the DNS addresses that your AD Connector is pointing to.

Note

If you have an update in progress, you must wait until it is complete before submitting another update.

To update your DNS settings for AD Connector

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, choose **Directories**.
2. Choose the directory ID link for your directory.
3. On the **Directory details** page, choose **Network & security**.
4. In the **Existing DNS settings** section, choose **Update**.
5. In the **Update existing DNS addresses** dialog, type the updated DNS IP addresses, and then choose **Update**.

Best Practices for AD Connector

Here are some suggestions and guidelines you should consider to avoid problems and get the most out of AD Connector.

Setting Up: Prerequisites

Consider these guidelines before creating your directory.

Verify You Have the Right Directory Type

AWS Directory Service provides multiple ways to use Microsoft Active Directory with other AWS services. You can choose the directory service with the features you need at a cost that fits your budget:

- **AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory** is a feature-rich managed Microsoft Active Directory hosted on the AWS cloud. AWS Managed Microsoft AD is your best choice if you have more than 5,000 users and need a trust relationship set up between an AWS hosted directory and your on-premises directories.
- **AD Connector** simply connects your existing on-premises Active Directory to AWS. AD Connector is your best choice when you want to use your existing on-premises directory with AWS services.
- **Simple AD** is an inexpensive Active Directory-compatible service with the common directory features. In most cases, Simple AD is the least expensive option and your best choice if you have 5,000 or fewer users and don't need the more advanced Microsoft Active Directory features.

For a more detailed comparison of AWS Directory Service options, see [Which to Choose \(p. 1\)](#).

Ensure Your VPCs and Instances are Configured Correctly

In order to connect to, manage, and use your directories, you must properly configure the VPCs that the directories are associated with. See either [AWS Managed Microsoft AD Prerequisites \(p. 9\)](#), [AD Connector Prerequisites \(p. 131\)](#), or [Simple AD Prerequisites \(p. 157\)](#) for information about the VPC security and networking requirements.

If you are adding an instance to your domain, ensure that you have connectivity and remote access to your instance as described in [Join an EC2 Instance to Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Directory \(p. 46\)](#).

Be Aware of Your Limits

Learn about the various limits for your specific directory type. The available storage and the aggregate size of your objects are the only limitations on the number of objects you may store in your directory.

See either [Limits for AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 109\)](#), [Limits for AD Connector \(p. 152\)](#), or [Limits for Simple AD \(p. 198\)](#) for details about your chosen directory.

Understand Your Directory's AWS Security Group Configuration and Use

AWS creates a [security group](#) and attaches it to your directory's [elastic network interfaces](#) that are accessible from within your peered or resized [VPCs](#). AWS configures the security group to block unnecessary traffic to the directory and allows necessary traffic.

Modifying the Directory Security Group

If you want to modify the security of your directories' security groups, you can do so. Make such changes only if you fully understand how security group filtering works. For more information, see [Amazon EC2 Security Groups for Linux Instances](#) in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*. Improper changes can result in loss of communications to intended computers and instances. AWS recommends that you do not attempt to open additional ports to your directory as this decreases the security of your directory. Please carefully review the [AWS Shared Responsibility Model](#).

Warning

It is technically possible for you to associate the directory's security group with other EC2 instances that you create. However, AWS recommends against this practice. AWS may have reasons to modify the security group without notice to address functional or security needs of the managed directory. Such changes affect any instances with which you associate the directory security group and may disrupt operation of the associated instances. Furthermore, associating the directory security group with your EC2 instances may create a potential security risk for your EC2 instances.

Configure On-premises Sites and Subnets Correctly When Using AD Connector

If your on-premises network has Active Directory sites defined, you must make sure the subnets in the VPC where your AD Connector resides are defined in an Active Directory site, and that no conflicts exist between the subnets in your VPC and the subnets in your other sites.

To discover domain controllers, AD Connector uses the Active Directory site whose subnet IP address ranges are close to those in the VPC that contain the AD Connector. If you have a site whose subnets have the same IP address ranges as those in your VPC, AD Connector will discover the domain controllers in that site, which may not be physically close to your region.

Understand Username Restrictions for AWS Applications

AWS Directory Service provides support for most character formats that can be used in the construction of usernames. However, there are character restrictions that are enforced on usernames that will be used for signing in to AWS applications, such as Amazon WorkSpaces, Amazon WorkDocs, Amazon WorkMail, or Amazon QuickSight. These restrictions require that the following characters not be used:

- Spaces
- `!"#$%&'()*+,-/;<=>?@[\\]^_`{|}~`

Note

The @ symbol is allowed as long as it precedes a UPN suffix.

Programming Your Applications

Before you program your applications, consider the following:

Load Test Before Rolling Out to Production

Be sure to do lab testing with applications and requests that are representative of your production workload to confirm that the directory scales to the load of your application. Should you require additional capacity, spread your loads across multiple AD Connector directories.

Using Your Directory

Here are some suggestions to keep in mind when using your directory.

Rotate Admin Credentials Regularly

Change your AD Connector service account Admin password regularly, and make sure that the password is consistent with your existing Active Directory password policies. For instructions on how to change the service account password, see [Update Your AD Connector Service Account Credentials in AWS Directory Service](#) (p. 142).

Use Unique AD Connectors for Each Domain

AD Connectors and your on-premises AD domains have a 1-to-1 relationship. That is, for each on-premises domain, including child domains in an AD forest that you want to authenticate against, you must create a unique AD Connector. Each AD Connector that you create must use a different service account, even if they are connected to the same directory.

Check for compatibility

When using AD Connector, you must ensure that your on-premises directory is and remains compatible with AWS Directory Services. For more information on your responsibilities, please see our [shared responsibility model](#).

Limits for AD Connector

The following are the default limits for AD Connector. Each limit is per region unless otherwise noted.

AD Connector Limits

Resource	Default Limit
AD Connector directories	10

Increase Your Limit

Perform the following steps to increase your limit for a region.

To request a limit increase for a region

1. Go to the [AWS Support Center](#) page, sign in, if necessary, and click **Open a new case**.
2. Under **Regarding**, select **Service Limit Increase**.
3. Under **Limit Type**, select **AWS Directory Service**.
4. Fill in all of the necessary fields in the form and click the button at the bottom of the page for your desired method of contact.

Application Compatibility Policy for AD Connector

As an alternative to AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory ([AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 8\)](#)), AD Connector is an Active Directory proxy for AWS created applications and services only. You configure the proxy to use a specified Active Directory domain. When the application must look up a user or group in Active Directory, AD Connector proxies the request to the directory. Similarly, when a user logs in to the application, AD Connector proxies the authentication request to the directory. There are no third-party applications that work with AD Connector.

The following is a list of compatible AWS applications and services:

- Amazon Chime - For detailed instructions, see [Connect to Your Active Directory](#).
- Amazon Connect - For more information, see [How Amazon Connect Works](#).
- Amazon EC2 for Windows – You can use the seamless domain join feature of Amazon EC2 Windows to join your instance to your self-managed Active Directory (on-premises). Once joined, the instance communicates directly with your Active Directory and bypasses AD Connector. For more information, see [Seamlessly Join a Windows EC2 Instance \(p. 46\)](#).
- AWS Management Console – You can use AD Connector to authenticate AWS Management Console users with their Active Directory credentials without setting up SAML infrastructure. For more information, see [Enable Access to the AWS Management Console with AD Credentials \(p. 102\)](#).
- Amazon QuickSight - For more information, see [Managing User Accounts in Amazon QuickSight Enterprise Edition](#).
- AWS Single Sign-On - For detailed instructions, see [Connect AWS SSO to an On-Premises Active Directory](#).
- Amazon WorkDocs - For detailed instructions, see [Connecting to Your On-Premises Directory with AD Connector](#).
- Amazon WorkMail - For detailed instructions, see [Integrate Amazon WorkMail with an Existing Directory \(Standard Setup\)](#).
- Amazon WorkSpaces - For detailed instructions, see [Launch a Workspace Using AD Connector](#).

Note

Amazon RDS for SQL Server is compatible with AWS Managed Microsoft AD only, and is not compatible with AD Connector. For more information, see the AWS Microsoft AD section in the [AWS Directory Service FAQs](#) page.

Troubleshooting AD Connector

The following can help you troubleshoot some common issues you might encounter when creating or using your directory.

Here are some common problems with AD Connector.

Seamless domain join for EC2 instances stopped working

If seamless domain join for EC2 instances was working and then stopped while the AD Connector was active, the credentials for your AD Connector service account may have expired. Expired credentials can prevent AD Connector from creating computer objects in your Active Directory.

To resolve this issue, update the service account passwords in the following order so that the passwords match:

1. Update the password for the service account in your Active Directory
2. Update the password for the service account in your AD Connector in AWS Directory Service

Updating the password only in AWS Directory Service does NOT push the password change to your existing on-premises Active Directory so it is important to do it in the order shown.

I receive a "Unable to Authenticate" error when using AWS applications to search for users or groups

You may experience errors when searching for users while using AWS applications, such as Amazon WorkSpaces or Amazon QuickSight, even while the AD Connector status was active. Expired credentials can prevent AD Connector from completing queries on objects in your Active Directory. Update the password for the service account using the ordered steps provided above.

I receive a "Authentication failed" error when querying users and groups in my domain through AD Connector

This can occur if you have the **LDAP server signing requirements** policy enabled. Consider disabling it and then trying your query again. For general information about this policy, see [Domain controller: LDAP server signing requirements](#).

I receive a "DNS unavailable" error when I try to connect to my on-premises directory

You receive an error message similar to the following when connecting to your on-premises directory:

```
DNS unavailable (TCP port 53) for IP: <DNS IP address>
```

AD Connector must be able to communicate with your on-premises DNS servers via TCP and UDP over port 53. Verify that your security groups and on-premises firewalls allow TCP and UDP communication over this port. For more information, see [AD Connector Prerequisites \(p. 131\)](#).

I receive a "Connectivity issues detected" error when I try to connect to my on-premises directory

You receive an error message similar to the following when connecting to your on-premises directory:

```
Connectivity issues detected: LDAP unavailable (TCP port 389) for IP: <IP address>  
Kerberos/authentication unavailable (TCP port 88) for IP: <IP address>  
Please ensure that the listed ports are available and retry the operation.
```

AD Connector must be able to communicate with your on-premises domain controllers via TCP and UDP over the following ports. Verify that your security groups and on-premises firewalls allow TCP and UDP communication over these ports. For more information, see [AD Connector Prerequisites \(p. 131\)](#).

- 88 (Kerberos)
- 389 (LDAP)

I receive an "SRV record" error when I try to connect to my on-premises directory

You receive an error message similar to one or more of the following when connecting to your on-premises directory:

```
SRV record for LDAP does not exist for IP: <DNS IP address>
```

```
SRV record for Kerberos does not exist for IP: <DNS IP address>
```

AD Connector needs to obtain the `_ldap._tcp.<DnsDomainName>` and `_kerberos._tcp.<DnsDomainName>` SRV records when connecting to your directory. You will get this error if the service cannot obtain these records from the DNS servers that you specified when connecting to your directory. For more information about these SRV records, see [SRV record requirements \(p. 133\)](#).

My directory is stuck in the "Requested" state

If you have a directory that has been in the "Requested" state for more than five minutes, try deleting the directory and recreating it. If this problem persists, contact the [AWS Support Center](#).

I receive an "AZ Constrained" error when I create a directory

Some AWS accounts created before 2012 might have access to Availability Zones in the US East (N. Virginia), US West (N. California), or Asia Pacific (Tokyo) region that do not support AWS Directory Service directories. If you receive an error such as this when creating a directory, choose a subnet in a different Availability Zone and try to create the directory again.

Some of my users cannot authenticate with my directory

Your user accounts must have Kerberos preauthentication enabled. This is the default setting for new user accounts, but it should not be modified. For more information about this setting, go to [Preauthentication](#) on Microsoft TechNet.

I receive an "Invalid Credentials" error when the service account used by AD Connector attempts to authenticate

This can occur if the hard drive on your domain controller runs out of space. Ensure that your domain controller's hard drives are not full.

Simple Active Directory

Simple AD is a standalone managed directory that is powered by a Samba 4 Active Directory Compatible Server. It is available in two sizes.

- Small - Supports up to 500 users (approximately 2,000 objects including users, groups, and computers).
- Large - Supports up to 5,000 users (approximately 20,000 objects including users, groups, and computers).

Simple AD provides a subset of the features offered by AWS Managed Microsoft AD, including the ability to manage user accounts and group memberships, create and apply group policies, securely connect to Amazon EC2 instances, and provide Kerberos-based single sign-on (SSO). However, note that Simple AD does not support features such as trust relationships with other domains, Active Directory Administrative Center, PowerShell support, Active Directory recycle bin, group managed service accounts, and schema extensions for POSIX and Microsoft applications.

Simple AD offers many advantages:

- Simple AD makes it easier to [manage Amazon EC2 instances running Linux and Windows](#) and deploy Windows applications in the AWS Cloud.
- Many of the applications and tools that you use today that require Microsoft Active Directory support can be used with Simple AD.
- User accounts in Simple AD allow access to AWS applications such as Amazon WorkSpaces, Amazon WorkDocs, or Amazon WorkMail.
- You can manage AWS resources through IAM role-based access to the AWS Management Console.
- Daily automated snapshots enable point-in-time recovery.

Simple AD does not support any of the following:

- Amazon AppStream 2.0
- Amazon Chime
- Amazon RDS for SQL Server
- AWS Single Sign-On
- Trust relationships with other domains
- Active Directory Administrative Center
- PowerShell
- Active Directory recycle bin
- Group managed service accounts
- Schema extensions for POSIX and Microsoft applications

Continue reading the topics in this section to learn how to create your own Simple AD.

Topics

- [Getting Started with Simple AD \(p. 157\)](#)
- [How To Administer Simple AD \(p. 160\)](#)
- [Tutorial: Create a Simple AD Directory \(p. 193\)](#)
- [Best Practices for Simple AD \(p. 196\)](#)
- [Limits for Simple AD \(p. 198\)](#)
- [Application Compatibility Policy for Simple AD \(p. 199\)](#)
- [Troubleshooting Simple AD \(p. 200\)](#)

Getting Started with Simple AD

Simple AD creates a fully managed, Samba-based directory in the AWS cloud. When you create a directory with Simple AD, AWS Directory Service creates two domain controllers and DNS servers on your behalf. The domain controllers are created in different subnets in a VPC; this redundancy helps ensure that your directory remains accessible even if a failure occurs.

Topics

- [Simple AD Prerequisites \(p. 157\)](#)
- [Create a Simple AD Directory \(p. 158\)](#)
- [What Gets Created \(p. 159\)](#)
- [Configure DNS \(p. 159\)](#)

Simple AD Prerequisites

To create a Simple AD directory, you need a VPC with the following:

- At least two subnets. For Simple AD to install correctly, you must install your two domain controllers in separate subnets that must be in a different Availability Zone. In addition, the subnets must be in the same Classless Inter-Domain Routing (CIDR) range. If you want to extend or resize the VPC for your directory, then make sure to select both of the domain controller subnets for the extended VPC CIDR range.
- The VPC must have default hardware tenancy.
- If you require LDAPS support with Simple AD, we recommend that you configure it using an Elastic Load Balancer and HA Proxy running on EC2 instances. This model enables you to use a strong certificate for the LDAPS connection, simplify access to LDAPS through a single ELB IP address, and have automatic fail-over through the HA Proxy. For more information about how to configure LDAPS with Simple AD, see [How to Configure an LDAPS Endpoint for Simple AD](#) in the *AWS Security Blog*.
- The following encryption types must be enabled in the directory:
 - RC4_HMAC_MD5
 - AES128_HMAC_SHA1
 - AES256_HMAC_SHA1
 - Future encryption types

Note

Disabling these encryption types can cause communication issues with RSAT (Remote Server Administration Tools) and impact the availability of your directory.

AWS Directory Service uses a two VPC structure. The EC2 instances which make up your directory run outside of your AWS account, and are managed by AWS. They have two network adapters, `ETH0` and

ETH1. ETH0 is the management adapter, and exists outside of your account. ETH1 is created within your account.

The management IP range of your directory's ETH0 network is chosen programmatically to ensure it does not conflict with the VPC where your directory is deployed. This IP range can be in either of the following pairs (as Directories run in two subnets):

- 10.0.1.0/24 & 10.0.2.0/24
- 192.168.1.0/24 & 192.168.2.0/24

We avoid conflicts by checking the first octet of the ETH1 CIDR. If it starts with a 10, then we choose a 192.168.0.0/16 VPC with 192.168.1.0/24 and 192.168.2.0/24 subnets. If the first octet is anything else other than a 10 we choose a 10.0.0.0/16 VPC with 10.0.1.0/24 and 10.0.2.0/24 subnets.

The selection algorithm does not include routes on your VPC. It is therefore possible to have an IP routing conflict result from this scenario.

Create a Simple AD Directory

To create a new directory, perform the following steps. Before starting this procedure, make sure you have completed the prerequisites identified in [Simple AD Prerequisites \(p. 157\)](#).

To create a Simple AD directory

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, choose **Directories** and then choose **Set up directory**.
2. On the **Select directory type** page, choose **Simple AD**, and then choose **Next**.
3. On the **Enter directory information** page, provide the following information:

Directory size

Choose from either the **Small** or **Large** size option. For more information about sizes, see [Simple Active Directory \(p. 156\)](#).

Organization name

A unique organization name for your directory that will be used to register client devices.

This field is only available if you are creating your directory as part of launching Amazon WorkSpaces.

Directory DNS name

The fully qualified name for the directory, such as corp.example.com.

Directory NetBIOS name

The short name for the directory, such as CORP.

Administrator password

The password for the directory administrator. The directory creation process creates an administrator account with the user name Administrator and this password.

The directory administrator password is case-sensitive and must be between 8 and 64 characters in length, inclusive. It must also contain at least one character from three of the following four categories:

- Lowercase letters (a-z)
- Uppercase letters (A-Z)

- Numbers (0-9)
- Non-alphanumeric characters (~!@#\$%^&* _-+= ` \000[];'"<>.,?/)

Confirm password

Retype the administrator password.

Directory description

An optional description for the directory.

4. On the **Choose VPC and subnets** page, provide the following information, and then choose **Next**.

VPC

The VPC for the directory.

Subnets

Choose the subnets for the domain controllers. The two subnets must be in different Availability Zones.

5. On the **Review & create** page, review the directory information and make any necessary changes. When the information is correct, choose **Create directory**. It takes several minutes for the directory to be created. Once created, the **Status** value changes to **Active**.

What Gets Created

When you create a directory with Simple AD, AWS Directory Service performs the following tasks on your behalf:

- Sets up a Samba-based directory within the VPC.
- Creates a directory administrator account with the user name `Administrator` and the specified password. You use this account to manage your directory.

Important

Be sure to save this password. AWS Directory Service does not store this password, and it cannot be retrieved. However, you can reset a password from the AWS Directory Service console or by using the [ResetUserPassword](#) API.

- Creates a security group for the directory controllers.
- Creates an account with the name `AWSAdminD-xxxxxxx` that has domain admin privileges. This account is used by AWS Directory Service to perform automated operations for directory maintenance operations, such as taking directory snapshots and FSMO role transfers. The credentials for this account are securely stored by AWS Directory Service.
- Automatically associates an elastic network interface with each of your domain controllers. Each of these network interfaces are essential to preserve connectivity between EC2 and AWS Directory Service and should never be deleted. You can identify all network interfaces reserved for use with AWS Directory Service by the description: "AWS created network interface for directory *directory-id*". For more information, see [Elastic Network Interfaces](#) in the Amazon EC2 User Guide.

Configure DNS

Simple AD forwards DNS requests to the IP address of the Amazon-provided DNS servers for your VPC. These DNS servers will resolve names configured in your Route 53 private hosted zones. By pointing your on-premises computers to your Simple AD, you can now resolve DNS requests to the private hosted zone.

Note that to enable your Simple AD to respond to external DNS queries, the network access control list (ACL) for the VPC containing your Simple AD must be configured to allow traffic from outside the VPC.

If you are not using Route 53 private hosted zones, your DNS requests will be forwarded to public DNS servers.

If you're using custom DNS servers that are outside of your VPC and you want to use private DNS, you must reconfigure to use custom DNS servers on EC2 instances within your VPC. For more information, see [Working with Private Hosted Zones](#).

If you want your Simple AD to resolve names using both DNS servers within your VPC and private DNS servers outside of your VPC, you can do this using a DHCP options set. For a detailed example, see [this article](#).

Note

DNS dynamic updates are not supported in Simple AD domains. You can instead make the changes directly by connecting to your directory using DNS Manager on an instance that is joined to your domain.

For more information on Route 53, see [What is Route 53](#).

How To Administer Simple AD

This section lists all of the procedures for operating and maintaining an Simple AD environment.

Topics

- [Manage Users and Groups in Simple AD \(p. 160\)](#)
- [Monitor Your Simple AD Directory \(p. 165\)](#)
- [Join an EC2 Instance to Your Simple AD Directory \(p. 167\)](#)
- [Maintain Your Simple AD Directory \(p. 180\)](#)
- [Enable Access to AWS Applications and Services \(p. 183\)](#)
- [Enable Access to the AWS Management Console with AD Credentials \(p. 191\)](#)

Manage Users and Groups in Simple AD

Users represent individual people or entities that have access to your directory. Groups are very useful for giving or denying privileges to groups of users, rather than having to apply those privileges to each individual user. If a user moves to a different organization, you move that user to a different group and they automatically receive the privileges needed for the new organization.

To create users and groups in an AWS Directory Service directory, you must use any instance (from either on-premises or EC2) that has been joined to your AWS Directory Service directory, and be logged in as a user that has privileges to create users and groups. You will also need to install the Active Directory Tools on your EC2 instance so you can add your users and groups with the Active Directory Users and Computers snap-in. For more information about how to set up an EC2 instance and install the necessary tools, see [Step 3: Deploy an EC2 Instance to Manage AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 117\)](#).

Note

Your user accounts must have Kerberos preauthentication enabled. This is the default setting for new user accounts, but it should not be modified. For more information about this setting, go to [Preauthentication](#) on Microsoft TechNet.

The following topics include instructions on how to create and manage users and groups.

Topics

- [Installing the Active Directory Administration Tools \(p. 161\)](#)

- [Create a User \(p. 162\)](#)
- [Reset a User Password \(p. 163\)](#)
- [Create a Group \(p. 164\)](#)
- [Add a User to a Group \(p. 164\)](#)

Installing the Active Directory Administration Tools

To manage your directory from an EC2 Windows instance, you need to install the Active Directory Domain Services and Active Directory Lightweight Directory Services Tools on the instance.

Topics

- [Install the Active Directory Administration Tools on Windows Server 2008 \(p. 60\)](#)
- [Install the Active Directory Administration Tools on Windows Server 2012 \(p. 60\)](#)
- [Install the Active Directory Administration Tools on Windows Server 2016 \(p. 61\)](#)
- [Install the Active Directory Administration Tools on Windows Server 2019 \(p. 61\)](#)

You can optionally choose to install the Active Directory administration tools using Windows PowerShell. For example, you can install the Active Directory remote administration tools from a PowerShell prompt using `Install-WindowsFeature RSAT-ADDS`. For more information, see [Install-WindowsFeature](#) on the Microsoft Website.

Install the Active Directory Administration Tools on Windows Server 2008

To install the Active Directory administration tools on Windows Server 2008

1. Open Server Manager by choosing **Start, Administrative Tools, Server Manager**.
2. In the **Server Manager** tree pane, select **Features**, and choose **Add Features**,
3. In the **Add Features Wizard**, open **Remote Server Administration Tools, Role Administration Tools**, select **AD DS and AD LDS Tools**, scroll down and select **DNS**, then choose **Next**.
4. Review the information and choose **Install**. The feature installation requires that the instance be restarted. When the instance has restarted, the Active Directory Domain Services and Active Directory Lightweight Directory Services Tools are available on the **Start** menu, under **All Programs > Administrative Tools**.

Install the Active Directory Administration Tools on Windows Server 2012

To install the Active Directory administration tools on Windows Server 2012

1. Open Server Manager from the Start screen by choosing **Server Manager**.
2. In the **Server Manager Dashboard**, choose **Add roles and features**,
3. In the **Add Roles and Features Wizard** choose **Installation Type**, select **Role-based or feature-based installation**, and choose **Next**.
4. Under **Server Selection**, make sure the local server is selected, and choose **Features** in the left navigation pane.
5. In the **Features** tree, open **Remote Server Administration Tools, Role Administration Tools**, select **AD DS and AD LDS Tools**, scroll down and select **DNS Server Tools**, and then choose **Next**.
6. Review the information and choose **Install**. When the feature installation is finished, the Active Directory Domain Services and Active Directory Lightweight Directory Services Tools are available on the Start screen in the **Administrative Tools** folder.

Install the Active Directory Administration Tools on Windows Server 2016

To install the Active Directory administration tools on Windows Server 2016

1. Open Server Manager from the Start screen by choosing **Server Manager**.
2. In the **Server Manager Dashboard**, choose **Add roles and features**,
3. In the **Add Roles and Features Wizard** choose **Installation Type**, select **Role-based or feature-based installation**, and choose **Next**.
4. Under **Server Selection**, make sure the local server is selected, and choose **Features** in the left navigation pane.
5. In the **Features** tree, open **Remote Server Administration Tools, Role Administration Tools**, select **AD DS and AD LDS Tools**, scroll down and select **DNS Server Tools**, and then choose **Next**.
6. Review the information and choose **Install**. When the feature installation is finished, the Active Directory tools are available on the Start screen in the **Administrative Tools** folder.

Install the Active Directory Administration Tools on Windows Server 2019

To install the Active Directory administration tools on Windows Server 2019

1. Open Server Manager from the Start screen by choosing **Server Manager**.
2. In the **Server Manager Dashboard**, choose **Add roles and features**,
3. In the **Add Roles and Features Wizard** choose **Installation Type**, select **Role-based or feature-based installation**, and choose **Next**.
4. Under **Server Selection**, make sure the local server is selected, and choose **Features** in the left navigation pane.
5. In the **Features** tree, open **Remote Server Administration Tools, Role Administration Tools**, select **AD DS and AD LDS Tools**, scroll down and select **DNS Server Tools**, and then choose **Next**.
6. Review the information and choose **Install**. When the feature installation is finished, the Active Directory tools are available on the Start screen in the **Administrative Tools** folder.

Create a User

Note

When using Simple AD, if you create a user account on a Linux instance with the option "Force user to change password at first login," that user will not be able to initially change their password using **kpasswd**. In order to change the password the first time, a domain administrator must update the user password using the Active Directory Management Tools.

Use the following procedure to create a user with an EC2 instance that is joined to your Simple AD directory.

To create a user

1. Open the Active Directory Users and Computers tool. There is a shortcut to this tool in the **Administrative Tools** folder.

Tip

You can run the following from a command prompt on the instance to open the Active Directory Users and Computers tool box directly.

```
%SystemRoot%\system32\dsa.msc
```

2. In the directory tree, select an OU under your directory's NetBIOS name OU where you want to store your user (for example, Corp\Users). For more information about the OU structure used by directories in AWS, see [What Gets Created \(p. 11\)](#).
3. On the **Action** menu, click **New**, and then click **User** to open the new user wizard.
4. On the first page of the wizard, enter the values for the following fields, and then click **Next**.
 - **First name**
 - **Last name**
 - **User logon name**
5. On the second page of the wizard, type a temporary password in **Password** and **Confirm Password**. Make sure the **User must change password at next logon** option is selected. None of the other options should be selected. Click **Next**.
6. On the third page of the wizard, verify that the new user information is correct and click **Finish**. The new user will appear in the **Users** folder.

Reset a User Password

Users must adhere to password policies as defined in the directory. Sometimes this can get the best of users, including the directory admin, and they forget their password. When this happens, you can quickly reset the user's password using AWS Directory Service if the user resides in either a Simple AD or AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory.

You can reset the password for any user in your directory with the following exceptions:

- For Simple AD, you cannot reset the password for any user that is a member of either the **Domain Admins** or **Enterprise Admins** group except for the Administrator user.
- For AWS Managed Microsoft AD, you cannot reset the password for any user that is in an OU other than the OU that is based off of the NetBIOS name you typed when you created your directory. For example, you cannot reset the password for a user in the **AWS Reserved** OU. For more information about the OU structure for an AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory, see [What Gets Created \(p. 11\)](#).

You can use any of the following methods to reset a user's password.

Method 1: To reset a user password (AWS Management Console)

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, under **Active Directory**, choose **Directories**, and then select the directory in the list where you want to reset a user's password.
2. Choose **Actions**, and then choose **Reset user password**.
3. In the **Reset user password** dialog, in **Username** type the username of the user whose password needs to change.
4. Type a password in **New password** and **Confirm Password**, and then choose **Reset password**.

Method 2: To reset a user password (Windows PowerShell)

1. Open Windows PowerShell.
2. Type the following command and replace the username "joebob" and password "P@ssw0rd" with your desired credentials. See [Reset-DSUserPassword Cmdlet](#) for more information.

```
Reset-DSUserPassword -UserName joebob -DirectoryId d-1234567890 -NewPassword P@ssw0rd
```


Method 3: To reset a user password (AWS CLI)

1. Open the AWS CLI.
2. Type the following command and replace the username "joebob" and password "P@ssw0rd" with your desired credentials. See [reset-user-password](#) in the *AWS CLI Command Reference* for more information.

```
aws ds reset-user-password --directory-id d-1234567890 --user-name joebob --new-password P@ssw0rd
```

Create a Group

Use the following procedure to create a security group with an EC2 instance that is joined to your Simple AD directory.

To create a group

1. Open the Active Directory Users and Computers tool. There is a shortcut to this tool in the **Administrative Tools** folder.

Tip

You can run the following from a command prompt on the instance to open the Active Directory Users and Computers tool box directly.

```
%SystemRoot%\system32\dsa.msc
```

2. In the directory tree, select an OU under your directory's NetBIOS name OU where you want to store your group (for example, Corp\Users). For more information about the OU structure used by directories in AWS, see [What Gets Created \(p. 11\)](#).
3. On the **Action** menu, click **New**, and then click **Group** to open the new group wizard.
4. Type a name for the group in **Group name**, select a **Group scope**, and select **Security** for the **Group type**.
5. Click **OK**. The new security group will appear in the **Users** folder.

Add a User to a Group

Use the following procedure to add a user to a security group with an EC2 instance that is joined to your Simple AD directory.

To add a user to a group

1. Open the Active Directory Users and Computers tool. There is a shortcut to this tool in the **Administrative Tools** folder.

Tip

You can run the following from a command prompt on the instance to open the Active Directory Users and Computers tool box directly.

```
%SystemRoot%\system32\dsa.msc
```

2. In the directory tree, select the OU under your directory's NetBIOS name OU where you stored your group, and select the group that you want to add a user as a member.
3. On the **Action** menu, click **Properties** to open the properties dialog box for the group.
4. Select the **Members** tab and click **Add**.

5. For **Enter the object names to select**, type the username you want to add and click **OK**. The name will be displayed in the **Members** list. Click **OK** again to update the group membership.
6. Verify that the user is now a member of the group by selecting the user in the **Users** folder and clicking **Properties** in the **Action** menu to open the properties dialog box. Select the **Member Of** tab. You should see the name of the group in the list of groups that the user belongs to.

Monitor Your Simple AD Directory

You can monitor your Simple AD directory with the following methods:

Topics

- [Understanding Your Directory Status \(p. 165\)](#)
- [Configure Directory Status Notifications \(p. 166\)](#)

Understanding Your Directory Status

The following are the various statuses for a directory.

Active

The directory is operating normally. No issues have been detected by the AWS Directory Service for your directory.

Creating

The directory is currently being created. Directory creation typically takes between 5 to 30 minutes but may vary depending on the system load.

Deleted

The directory has been deleted. All resources for the directory have been released. Once a directory enters this state, it cannot be recovered.

Deleting

The directory is currently being deleted. The directory will remain in this state until it has been completely deleted. Once a directory enters this state, the delete operation cannot be cancelled, and the directory cannot be recovered.

Failed

The directory could not be created. Please delete this directory. If this problem persists, please contact the [AWS Support Center](#).

Impaired

The directory is running in a degraded state. One or more issues have been detected, and not all directory operations may be working at full operational capacity. There are many potential reasons for the directory being in this state. These include normal operational maintenance activity such as patching or EC2 instance rotation, temporary hot spotting by an application on one of your domain controllers, or changes you made to your network that inadvertently disrupt directory communications. For more information, see either [Troubleshooting AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 126\)](#), [Troubleshooting AD Connector \(p. 153\)](#), [Troubleshooting Simple AD \(p. 200\)](#). For normal maintenance related issues, AWS resolves these issues within 40 minutes. If after reviewing the troubleshooting topic, your directory is in an Impaired state longer than 40 minutes, we recommend that you contact the [AWS Support Center](#).

Important

Do not restore a snapshot while a directory is in an Impaired state. It is rare that snapshot restore is necessary to resolve impairments. For more information, see [Snapshot or Restore Your Directory \(p. 88\)](#).

Inoperable

The directory is not functional. All directory endpoints have reported issues.

Requested

A request to create your directory is currently pending.

RestoreFailed

Restoring the directory from a snapshot failed. Please retry the restore operation. If this continues, try a different snapshot, or contact the [AWS Support Center](#).

Restoring

The directory is currently being restored from an automatic or manual snapshot. Restoring from a snapshot typically takes several minutes, depending on the size of the directory data in the snapshot.

For more information, see [Simple AD Directory Status Reasons \(p. 201\)](#).

Configure Directory Status Notifications

Using Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS), you can receive email or text (SMS) messages when the status of your directory changes. You get notified if your directory goes from an Active status to an [Impaired](#) or [Inoperable](#) status. You also receive a notification when the directory returns to an Active status.

How It Works

Amazon SNS uses “topics” to collect and distribute messages. Each topic has one or more subscribers who receive the messages that have been published to that topic. Using the steps below you can add AWS Directory Service as publisher to an Amazon SNS topic. When AWS Directory Service detects a change in your directory’s status, it publishes a message to that topic, which is then sent to the topic’s subscribers.

You can associate multiple directories as publishers to a single topic. You can also add directory status messages to topics that you’ve previously created in Amazon SNS. You have detailed control over who can publish to and subscribe to a topic. For complete information about Amazon SNS, see [What is Amazon SNS?](#).

To enable SNS messaging for your directory

1. Sign in to the AWS Management Console and open the AWS Directory Service console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/directoryservicev2/>.
2. On the **Directories** page, choose your directory ID.
3. Select the **Maintenance** tab.
4. In the **Directory monitoring** section, choose **Actions**, and then select **Create notification**.
5. On the **Create notification** page, select **Choose a notification type**, and then choose **Create a new notification**. Alternatively, if you already have an existing SNS topic, you can choose **Associate existing SNS topic** to send status messages from this directory to that topic.

Note

If you choose **Create a new notification** but then use the same topic name for an SNS topic that already exists, Amazon SNS does not create a new topic, but just adds the new subscription information to the existing topic.

If you choose **Associate existing SNS topic**, you will only be able to choose an SNS topic that is in the same region as the directory.

6. Choose the **Recipient type** and enter the **Recipient** contact information. If you enter a phone number for SMS, use numbers only. Do not include dashes, spaces, or parentheses.

7. (Optional) Provide a name for your topic and an SNS display name. The display name is a short name up to 10 characters that is included in all SMS messages from this topic. When using the SMS option, the display name is required.

Note

If you are logged in using an IAM user or role that has only the [DirectoryServiceFullAccess](#) managed policy, your topic name must start with "DirectoryMonitoring". If you'd like to further customize your topic name you'll need additional privileges for SNS.

8. Choose **Create**.

If you want to designate additional SNS subscribers, such as an additional email address, Amazon SQS queues or AWS Lambda, you can do this from the Amazon SNS console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/sns/v3/home>.

To remove directory status messages from a topic

1. Sign in to the AWS Management Console and open the AWS Directory Service console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/directoryservicev2/>.
2. On the **Directories** page, choose your directory ID.
3. Select the **Maintenance** tab.
4. In the **Directory monitoring** section, select an SNS topic name in the list, choose **Actions**, and then select **Remove**.
5. Choose **Remove**.

This removes your directory as a publisher to the selected SNS topic. If you want to delete the entire topic, you can do this from the Amazon SNS console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/sns/v3/home>.

Note

Before deleting an Amazon SNS topic using the SNS console, you should ensure that a directory is not sending status messages to that topic.

If you delete an Amazon SNS topic using the SNS console, this change will not immediately be reflected within the Directory Services console. You would only be notified the next time a directory publishes a notification to the deleted topic, in which case you would see an updated status on the directory's **Monitoring** tab indicating the topic could not be found.

Therefore, to avoid missing important directory status messages, before deleting any topic that receives messages from AWS Directory Service, associate your directory with a different Amazon SNS topic.

Join an EC2 Instance to Your Simple AD Directory

You can seamlessly join an EC2 instance to your directory domain when the instance is launched using AWS Systems Manager. For more information, see [Seamlessly Joining a Windows Instance to an AWS Directory Service Domain](#) in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide for Windows Instances*.

If you need to manually join an EC2 instance to your domain, you must launch the instance in the proper region and security group or subnet, then join the instance to the domain.

To be able to connect remotely to these instances, you must have IP connectivity to the instances from the network you are connecting from. In most cases, this requires that an internet gateway be attached to your VPC and that the instance has a public IP address.

Topics

- [Seamlessly Join a Windows EC2 Instance \(p. 168\)](#)
- [Manually Join a Windows Instance \(p. 169\)](#)
- [Manually Join a Linux Instance \(p. 170\)](#)

- [Delegate Directory Join Privileges for Simple AD \(p. 178\)](#)
- [Create a DHCP Options Set \(p. 180\)](#)

Seamlessly Join a Windows EC2 Instance

This procedure seamlessly joins a Windows EC2 instance to your Simple AD directory.

To seamlessly join a Windows EC2 instance

1. Sign in to the AWS Management Console and open the Amazon EC2 console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/ec2/>.
2. From the region selector in the navigation bar, choose the same region as the existing directory.
3. Choose **Launch Instance**.
4. On the **Step 1** page, choose **Select** for the appropriate AMI.
5. On the **Step 2** page, select the appropriate instance type, and then choose **Next: Configure Instance Details**.
6. On the **Step 3** page, do the following, and then choose **Next: Add Storage**:
 1. For **Network**, choose the VPC that your directory was created in.
 2. For **Subnet**, choose one of the public subnets in your VPC. The subnet that you choose must have all external traffic routed to an internet gateway. If this is not the case, you won't be able to connect to the instance remotely.
 3. For **Auto-assign Public IP**, choose **Enable**.

For more information about public and private IP addressing, see [Amazon EC2 Instance IP Addressing](#) in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide for Windows Instances*.

4. For **Domain join directory**, choose your domain from the list.

Note

This option is only available for Windows instances. Linux instances must be manually joined to the directory as explained in [Manually Join a Linux Instance \(p. 49\)](#).

5. For **IAM role**, do one of the following:

Select an IAM role that has the AWS managed policies **AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore** and **AmazonSSMDirectoryServiceAccess** attached to it.

-or-

If you haven't created an IAM role that has the **AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore** and **AmazonSSMDirectoryServiceAccess** managed policies attached to it, choose the **Create new IAM role** link, and then do the following:

- a. Choose **Create role**.
- b. Under **Select type of trusted entity**, choose **AWS service**.
- c. Under **Choose the service that this role will use**, in the full list of services, choose **EC2**.
- d. Under **Select your use case**, choose **EC2**, and then choose **Next: Permissions**.
- e. In the list of policies, select the **AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore** and **AmazonSSMDirectoryServiceAccess** policies. (To filter the list, type **SSM** in the search box.)

Note

AmazonSSMDirectoryServiceAccess provides the permissions to join instances to an Active Directory managed by AWS Directory Service.

AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore provides the minimum permissions necessary to use the Systems Manager service. For more information about creating a role with these permissions, and for information about other permissions and policies you can

assign to your IAM role, see [Create an IAM Instance Profile for Systems Manager](#) in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- f. Choose **Next: Tags**.
- g. (Optional) Add one or more tag key-value pairs to organize, track, or control access for this role, and then choose **Next: Review**.
- h. For **Role name**, enter a name for your new role, such as **EC2DomainJoin** or another name that you prefer.
- i. (Optional) For **Role description**, enter a description.
- j. Choose **Create role**.
- k. Go back to the **Step 3** page. For **IAM role**, choose the refresh icon next to **IAM role**. Your new role should be visible in the menu. Choose it and leave the rest of the settings on this page with their default values, and then choose **Next: Add Storage**.
7. On both the **Step 4** and **Step 5** pages, leave the default settings or make changes as needed, and then choose the **Next** buttons.
8. On the **Step 6** page, select a security group for the instance that has been configured to allow remote access to the instance from your network, and then choose **Review and Launch**.
9. On the **Step 7** page, choose **Launch**, select a key pair, and then choose **Launch Instance**.

Manually Join a Windows Instance

To manually join an existing Amazon EC2 Windows instance to a Simple AD or AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory directory, the instance must be launched as specified in [Seamlessly Join a Windows EC2 Instance](#) (p. 46).

To join a Windows instance to a Simple AD or AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory

1. Connect to the instance using any Remote Desktop Protocol client.
2. Open the TCP/IPv4 properties dialog box on the instance.

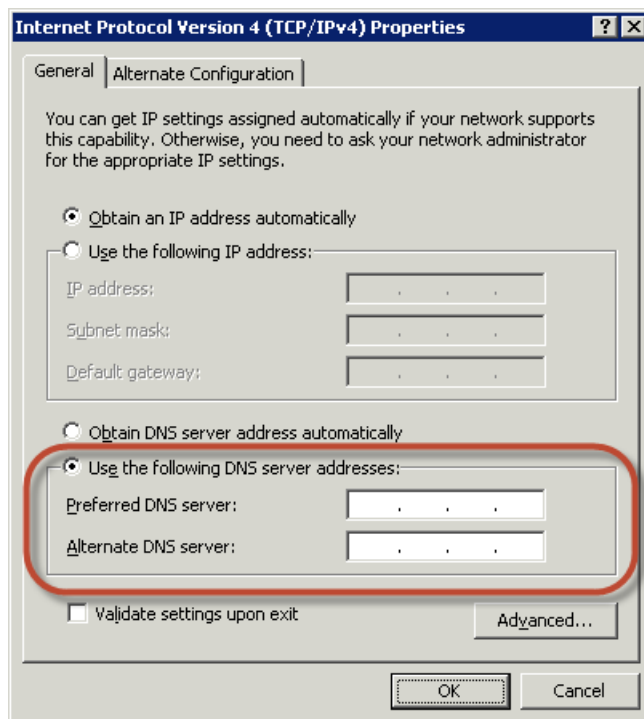
- a. Open **Network Connections**.

Tip

You can open **Network Connections** directly by running the following from a command prompt on the instance.

```
%SystemRoot%\system32\control.exe ncpa.cpl
```

- b. Open the context menu (right-click) for any enabled network connection and then choose **Properties**.
- c. In the connection properties dialog box, open (double-click) **Internet Protocol Version 4**.
3. Select **Use the following DNS server addresses**, change the **Preferred DNS server** and **Alternate DNS server** addresses to the IP addresses of the AWS Directory Service-provided DNS servers, and choose **OK**.



4. Open the **System Properties** dialog box for the instance, select the **Computer Name** tab, and choose **Change**.

Tip

You can open the **System Properties** dialog box directly by running the following from a command prompt on the instance.

```
%SystemRoot%\system32\control.exe sysdm.cpl
```

5. In the **Member of** field, select **Domain**, enter the fully-qualified name of your AWS Directory Service directory, and choose **OK**.
6. When prompted for the name and password for the domain administrator, enter the username and password of an account that has domain join privileges. For more information about delegating these privileges, see [Delegate Directory Join Privileges for AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 57\)](#).

Note

You can enter either the fully-qualified name of your domain or the NetBios name, followed by a backslash (\), and then the user name, in this case, **administrator**. For example, **corp.example.com\administrator** or **corp\administrator**.

7. After you receive the message welcoming you to the domain, restart the instance to have the changes take effect.

Now that your instance has been joined to the domain, you can log into that instance remotely and install utilities to manage the directory, such as adding users and groups.

Manually Join a Linux Instance

In addition to Amazon EC2 Windows instances, you can also join certain Amazon EC2 Linux instances to your Simple AD directory. The following Linux instance distributions and versions are supported:

- Amazon Linux AMI 2015.03
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.2

- Ubuntu Server 14.04 LTS
- CentOS 7

Note

Other Linux distributions and versions may work but have not been tested.

Join an Instance to Your Directory

Before you can join either an Amazon Linux, CentOS, Red Hat, or Ubuntu instance to your directory, the instance must first be launched as specified in [Seamlessly Join a Windows EC2 Instance \(p. 46\)](#).

Important

Some of the following procedures, if not performed correctly, can render your instance unreachable or unusable. Therefore, we strongly suggest you make a backup or take a snapshot of your instance before performing these procedures.

To join a linux instance to your directory

Follow the steps for your specific Linux instance using one of the following tabs:

Amazon Linux

1. Connect to the instance using any SSH client.
2. Configure the Linux instance to use the DNS server IP addresses of the AWS Directory Service-provided DNS servers. You can do this either by setting it up in the DHCP Options set attached to the VPC or by setting it manually on the instance. If you want to set it manually, see [How do I assign a static DNS server to a private Amazon EC2 instance](#) in the AWS Knowledge Center for guidance on setting the persistent DNS server for your particular Linux distribution and version.
3. Make sure your Amazon Linux - 64bit instance is up to date.

```
sudo yum -y update
```

4. Install the required Amazon Linux packages on your Linux instance.

Note

Some of these packages may already be installed.
As you install the packages, you might be presented with several pop-up configuration screens. You can generally leave the fields in these screens blank.

Amazon Linux 1

```
sudo yum -y install sssd realmd krb5-workstation
```

Amazon Linux 2

```
sudo yum -y install sssd realmd krb5-workstation samba-common-tools
```

Note

For help with determining the Amazon Linux version you are using, see [Identifying Amazon Linux Images](#) in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide for Linux Instances*.

5. Join the instance to the directory with the following command.

```
sudo realm join -U join_account@example.com example.com --verbose
```


`join_account@example.com`

An account in the `example.com` domain that has domain join privileges. Enter the password for the account when prompted. For more information about delegating these privileges, see [Delegate Directory Join Privileges for AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 57\)](#).

`example.com`

The fully-qualified DNS name of your directory.

```
...
* Successfully enrolled machine in realm
```

6. Set the SSH service to allow password authentication.
 - a. Open the `/etc/ssh/sshd_config` file in a text editor.

```
sudo vi /etc/ssh/sshd_config
```

- b. Set the `PasswordAuthentication` setting to `yes`.

```
PasswordAuthentication yes
```

- c. Restart the SSH service.

```
sudo systemctl restart sshd.service
```

Alternatively:

```
sudo service sshd restart
```

7. After the instance has restarted, connect to it with any SSH client and add the domain admins group to the sudoers list by performing the following steps:
 - a. Open the `sudoers` file with the following command:

```
sudo visudo
```

- b. Add the following to the bottom of the `sudoers` file and save it.

```
## Add the "Domain Admins" group from the example.com domain.
%Domain\ Admins@example.com ALL=(ALL:ALL) ALL
```

(The above example uses `"\<space>"` to create the Linux space character.)

CentOS

1. Connect to the instance using any SSH client.
2. Configure the Linux instance to use the DNS server IP addresses of the AWS Directory Service-provided DNS servers. You can do this either by setting it up in the DHCP Options set attached to the VPC or by setting it manually on the instance. If you want to set it manually, see [How do I assign a static DNS server to a private Amazon EC2 instance](#) in the AWS Knowledge Center for guidance on setting the persistent DNS server for your particular Linux distribution and version.
3. Make sure your CentOS 7 instance is up to date.

```
sudo yum -y update
```

4. Install the required CentOS 7 packages on your Linux instance.

Note

Some of these packages may already be installed.

As you install the packages, you might be presented with several pop-up configuration screens. You can generally leave the fields in these screens blank.

```
sudo yum -y install sssd realmd krb5-workstation samba-common-tools
```

5. Join the instance to the directory with the following command.

```
sudo realm join -U join_account@example.com example.com --verbose
```

join_account@example.com

An account in the *example.com* domain that has domain join privileges. Enter the password for the account when prompted. For more information about delegating these privileges, see [Delegate Directory Join Privileges for AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 57\)](#).

example.com

The fully-qualified DNS name of your directory.

```
...  
* Successfully enrolled machine in realm
```

6. Set the SSH service to allow password authentication.
 - a. Open the `/etc/ssh/sshd_config` file in a text editor.

```
sudo vi /etc/ssh/sshd_config
```

- b. Set the `PasswordAuthentication` setting to `yes`.

```
PasswordAuthentication yes
```

- c. Restart the SSH service.

```
sudo systemctl restart sshd.service
```

Alternatively:

```
sudo service sshd restart
```

7. After the instance has restarted, connect to it with any SSH client and add the domain admins group to the sudoers list by performing the following steps:
 - a. Open the sudoers file with the following command:

```
sudo visudo
```

- b. Add the following to the bottom of the sudoers file and save it.

```
## Add the "Domain Admins" group from the example.com domain.  
%Domain\ Adminsexample.com ALL=(ALL:ALL) ALL
```

Version 1.0

(The above example uses "<space>" to create the Linux space character.)

Red Hat

1. Connect to the instance using any SSH client.
2. Configure the Linux instance to use the DNS server IP addresses of the AWS Directory Service-provided DNS servers. You can do this either by setting it up in the DHCP Options set attached to the VPC or by setting it manually on the instance. If you want to set it manually, see [How do I assign a static DNS server to a private Amazon EC2 instance](#) in the AWS Knowledge Center for guidance on setting the persistent DNS server for your particular Linux distribution and version.
3. Make sure the Red Hat - 64bit instance is up to date.

```
sudo yum -y update
```

4. Install the required Red Hat packages on your Linux instance.

Note

Some of these packages may already be installed.
As you install the packages, you might be presented with several pop-up configuration screens. You can generally leave the fields in these screens blank.

```
sudo yum -y install sssd realmd krb5-workstation samba-common-tools
```

5. Join the instance to the directory with the following command.

```
sudo realm join -v -U join_account example.com --install=
```

join_account

An account in the *example.com* domain that has domain join privileges. Enter the password for the account when prompted. For more information about delegating these privileges, see [Delegate Directory Join Privileges for AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 57\)](#).

example.com

The fully-qualified DNS name of your directory.

```
...  
* Successfully enrolled machine in realm
```

6. Set the SSH service to allow password authentication.
 - a. Open the `/etc/ssh/sshd_config` file in a text editor.

```
sudo vi /etc/ssh/sshd_config
```

- b. Set the `PasswordAuthentication` setting to `yes`.

```
PasswordAuthentication yes
```

- c. Restart the SSH service.

```
sudo systemctl restart sshd.service
```

Alternatively:

```
sudo service sshd restart
```

7. After the instance has restarted, connect to it with any SSH client and add the domain admins group to the sudoers list by performing the following steps:

- a. Open the sudoers file with the following command:

```
sudo visudo
```

- b. Add the following to the bottom of the sudoers file and save it.

```
## Add the "Domain Admins" group from the example.com domain.  
%Domain\ Admins@example.com ALL=(ALL:ALL) ALL
```

(The above example uses "<space>" to create the Linux space character.)

Ubuntu

1. Connect to the instance using any SSH client.
2. Configure the Linux instance to use the DNS server IP addresses of the AWS Directory Service-provided DNS servers. You can do this either by setting it up in the DHCP Options set attached to the VPC or by setting it manually on the instance. If you want to set it manually, see [How do I assign a static DNS server to a private Amazon EC2 instance](#) in the AWS Knowledge Center for guidance on setting the persistent DNS server for your particular Linux distribution and version.
3. Make sure your Ubuntu - 64bit instance is up to date.

```
sudo apt-get update  
sudo apt-get -y upgrade
```

4. Install the required Ubuntu packages on your Linux instance.

Note

Some of these packages may already be installed.

As you install the packages, you might be presented with several pop-up configuration screens. You can generally leave the fields in these screens blank.

```
sudo apt-get -y install sssd realmd krb5-user samba-common packagekit adcli
```

5. Disable Reverse DNS resolution. Ubuntu Instances **must** be reverse-resolvable in DNS before the realm will work. Otherwise, you have to disable reverse DNS in /etc/krb5.conf as follows:

```
[libdefaults]  
default_realm = EXAMPLE.COM  
rdns = false
```

6. Join the instance to the directory with the following command.

```
sudo realm join -U join_account@example.com example.com --verbose
```

Note

If you are using Ubuntu 16.04, you must enter the domain name portion of the username with all capital letters. For example, `join_account@EXAMPLE.COM example.com --verbose`.

`join_account@example.com`

An account in the `example.com` domain that has domain join privileges. Enter the password for the account when prompted. For more information about delegating these privileges, see [Delegate Directory Join Privileges for AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 57\)](#).

`example.com`

The fully-qualified DNS name of your directory.

```
...
* Successfully enrolled machine in realm
```

7. Set the SSH service to allow password authentication.
 - a. Open the `/etc/ssh/sshd_config` file in a text editor.

```
sudo vi /etc/ssh/sshd_config
```

- b. Set the `PasswordAuthentication` setting to `yes`.

```
PasswordAuthentication yes
```

- c. Restart the SSH service.

```
sudo systemctl restart sshd.service
```

Alternatively:

```
sudo service sshd restart
```

8. After the instance has restarted, connect to it with any SSH client and add the domain admins group to the sudoers list by performing the following steps:
 - a. Open the `sudoers` file with the following command:

```
sudo visudo
```

- b. Add the following to the bottom of the `sudoers` file and save it.

```
## Add the "Domain Admins" group from the example.com domain.
%Domain\ Admins@example.com ALL=(ALL:ALL) ALL
```

(The above example uses `"\<space>"` to create the Linux space character.)

Note

When using Simple AD, if you create a user account on a Linux instance with the option "Force user to change password at first login," that user will not be able to initially change their password using `kpasswd`. In order to change the password the first time, a domain administrator must update the user password using the Active Directory Management Tools.

Manage Accounts from a Linux instance

To manage accounts in Simple AD from a Linux instance, you must update specific configuration files on your Linux instance as follows:

1. Set **krb5_use_kdcinfo** to **False** in the **/etc/sss/sss.conf** file. For example:

```
[domain/example.com]
    krb5_use_kdcinfo = False
```

2. In order for the configuration to take affect you need to restart the sssd service:

```
$ sudo systemctl restart sssd.service
```

Alternatively, you could use:

```
$ sudo service sssd start
```

3. If you will be managing users from a CentOS Linux instance, you must also edit the file **/etc/smb.conf** to include:

```
[global]
    workgroup = EXAMPLE.COM
    realm = EXAMPLE.COM
    netbios name = EXAMPLE
    security = ads
```

Restricting Account Login Access

Since all accounts are defined in Active Directory, by default, all the users in the directory can log in to the instance. You can allow only specific users to log in to the instance with **ad_access_filter** in **sss.conf**. For example:

```
ad_access_filter = (memberOf=cn=admins,ou=Testou,dc=example,dc=com)
```

memberOf

Indicates that users should only be allowed access to the instance if they are a member of a specific group.

cn

The canonical name of the group that should have access. In this example, the group name is *admins*.

ou

This is the organizational unit in which the above group is located. In this example, the OU is *Testou*.

dc

This is the domain component of your domain. In this example, *example*.

dc

This is an additional domain component. In this example, *com*.

You must manually add **ad_access_filter** to your **/etc/sss/sss.conf**. After you do this, your **sss.conf** might look like this:

```
[sss]
domains = example.com
config_file_version = 2
services = nss, pam

[domain/example.com]
ad_domain = example.com
krb5_realm = EXAMPLE.COM
realmd_tags = manages-system joined-with-samba
cache_credentials = True
id_provider = ad
krb5_store_password_if_offline = True
default_shell = /bin/bash
ldap_id_mapping = True
use_fully_qualified_names = True
fallback_homedir = /home/%u@d
access_provider = ad
ad_access_filter = (memberOf=cn=admins,ou=Testou,dc=example,dc=com)
```

In order for the configuration to take affect you need to restart the sssd service:

```
sudo systemctl restart sssd.service
```

Alternatively, you could use:

```
sudo service sssd start
```

Connect to the Instance

When a user connects to the instance using an SSH client, they are prompted for their username. The user can enter the username in either the `username@example.com` or `EXAMPLE\username` format. The response will appear similar to the following:

```
login as: johndoe@example.com
johndoe@example.com's password:
Last login: Thu Jun 25 16:26:28 2015 from XX.XX.XX.XX
```

Delegate Directory Join Privileges for Simple AD

To join a computer to your directory, you need an account that has privileges to join computers to the directory.

With Simple AD, members of the **Domain Admins** group have sufficient privileges to join computers to the directory.

However, as a best practice, you should use an account that has only the minimum privileges necessary. The following procedure demonstrates how to create a new group called **Joiners** and delegate the privileges to this group that are needed to join computers to the directory.

You must perform this procedure on a machine that is joined to your directory and has the **Active Directory User and Computers** MMC snap-in installed. You must also be logged in as a domain administrator.

To delegate join privileges for Simple AD

1. Open **Active Directory User and Computers** and select your domain root in the navigation tree.

2. In the navigation tree on the left, open the context menu (right-click) for **Users**, choose **New**, and then choose **Group**.
3. In the **New Object - Group** box, type the following and choose **OK**.
 - For **Group name**, type **Joiners**.
 - For **Group scope**, choose **Global**.
 - For **Group type**, choose **Security**.
4. In the navigation tree, select your domain root. From the **Action** menu, choose **Delegate Control**.
5. On the **Delegation of Control Wizard** page, choose **Next**, and then choose **Add**.
6. In the **Select Users, Computers, or Groups** box, type **Joiners** and choose **OK**. If more than one object is found, select the **Joiners** group created above. Choose **Next**.
7. On the **Tasks to Delegate** page, select **Create a custom task to delegate**, and then choose **Next**.
8. Select **Only the following objects in the folder**, and then select **Computer objects**.
9. Select **Create selected objects in this folder** and **Delete selected objects in this folder**. Then choose **Next**.

Delegation of Control Wizard

Active Directory Object Type
Indicate the scope of the task you want to delegate.

Delegate control of:

☐ This folder, existing objects in this folder, and creation of new objects in this folder

☒ Only the following objects in the folder:

- ☐ Site Settings objects
- ☐ Sites Container objects
- ☐ Subnet objects
- ☐ Subnets Container objects
- ☐ Trusted Domain objects
- ☒ User objects

☒ Create selected objects in this folder

☒ Delete selected objects in this folder

< Back Next > Cancel Help

10. Select **Read** and **Write**, and then choose **Next**.

Delegation of Control Wizard

Permissions
Select the permissions you want to delegate.

Show these permissions:

☒ General

☒ Property-specific

☐ Creation/deletion of specific child objects

Permissions:

- ☐ Full Control
- ☒ Read
- ☒ Write
- ☐ Create All Child Objects
- ☐ Delete All Child Objects
- ☐ Read All Properties

< Back Next > Cancel Help

11. Verify the information on the **Completing the Delegation of Control Wizard** page and choose **Finish**.
12. Create a user with a strong password and add that user to the **Joiners** group. The user will then have sufficient privileges to connect AWS Directory Service to the directory.

Create a DHCP Options Set

AWS recommends that you create a DHCP options set for your AWS Directory Service directory and assign the DHCP options set to the VPC that your directory is in. This allows any instances in that VPC to point to the specified domain and DNS servers to resolve their domain names.

For more information about DHCP options sets, see [DHCP Options Sets](#) in the *Amazon VPC User Guide*.

To create a DHCP options set for your directory

1. Open the Amazon VPC console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/vpc/>.
2. In the navigation pane, choose **DHCP Options Sets**, and then choose **Create DHCP options set**.
3. On the **Create DHCP options set** page, enter the following values for your directory:

Name

An optional tag for the options set.

Domain name

The fully-qualified name of your directory, such as `corp.example.com`.

Domain name servers

The IP addresses of your AWS-provided directory's DNS servers.

Note

You can find these addresses by going to the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, selecting **Directories** and then choosing the correct directory ID.

NTP servers

Leave this field blank.

NetBIOS name servers

Leave this field blank.

NetBIOS node type

Leave this field blank.

4. Choose **Create DHCP options set**. The new set of DHCP options appears in your list of DHCP options.
5. Make a note of the ID of the new set of DHCP options (dopt-~~xxxxxxxx~~). You use it to associate the new options set with your VPC.

To change the DHCP options set associated with a VPC

After you create a set of DHCP options, you can't modify them. If you want your VPC to use a different set of DHCP options, you must create a new set and associate them with your VPC. You can also set up your VPC to use no DHCP options at all.

1. Open the Amazon VPC console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/vpc/>.
2. In the navigation pane, choose **Your VPCs**.
3. Select the VPC, and then choose **Actions, Edit DHCP options set**.
4. For **DHCP options set**, select an options set or choose **No DHCP options set**, and then choose **Save**.

Maintain Your Simple AD Directory

This section describes how to maintain common administrative tasks for your Simple AD environment.

Topics

- [Delete Your Directory \(p. 181\)](#)
- [Snapshot or Restore Your Directory \(p. 182\)](#)
- [View Directory Information \(p. 183\)](#)

Delete Your Directory

When a Simple AD or AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory directory is deleted, all of the directory data and snapshots are deleted and cannot be recovered. After the directory is deleted, all instances that are joined to the directory remain intact. You cannot, however, use your directory credentials to log in to these instances. You need to log in to these instances with a user account that is local to the instance.

When an AD Connector directory is deleted, your on-premises directory remains intact. All instances that are joined to the directory also remain intact and remain joined to your on-premises directory. You can still use your directory credentials to log in to these instances.

To delete a directory

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, select **Directories**.
2. Ensure that no AWS applications are enabled for the directory.
 - a. On the **Directories** page, choose your directory ID.
 - b. On the **Directory details** page, select the **Application management** tab. In the **AWS apps & services** section, you see which AWS applications are enabled for your directory.
 - To disable Amazon WorkSpaces, you must deregister the service from the directory in the Amazon WorkSpaces console. For more information, see [Deregistering From a Directory](#) in the *Amazon WorkSpaces Administration Guide*.
 - To disable Amazon WorkSpaces Application Manager, you must remove all application assignments in the Amazon WAM console. For more information, see [Removing All Application Assignments](#) in the *Amazon WAM Administration Guide*.
 - To disable Amazon WorkDocs, you must delete the Amazon WorkDocs site in the Amazon WorkDocs console. For more information, see [Delete a Site](#) in the *Amazon WorkDocs Administration Guide*.
 - To disable Amazon WorkMail, you must remove the Amazon WorkMail organization in the Amazon WorkMail console. For more information, see [Remove an Organization](#) in the *Amazon WorkMail Administrator Guide*.
 - Disable AWS Management Console access.
 - To disable Amazon Relational Database Service, you must remove the Amazon RDS instance from the domain. For more information, see [Managing a DB Instance in a Domain](#) in the *Amazon RDS User Guide*.
 - To disable Amazon QuickSight, you must unsubscribe from Amazon QuickSight. For more information, see [Closing Your Amazon QuickSight Account](#) in the *Amazon QuickSight User Guide*.
 - To disable Amazon Connect, you must delete the Amazon Connect Instance. For more information, see [Deleting an Amazon Connect Instance](#) in the *Amazon Connect Administration Guide*.

Note

If you are using AWS Single Sign-On and have previously connected it to the AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory you plan to delete, you must first disconnect the

directory from AWS SSO before you can delete it. For more information, see [Disconnect a Directory](#) in the *AWS SSO User Guide*.

3. In the navigation pane, choose **Directories**.
4. Select only the directory to be deleted and click **Delete**. It takes several minutes for the directory to be deleted. When the directory has been deleted, it is removed from your directory list.

Snapshot or Restore Your Directory

AWS Directory Service provides the ability to take manual snapshots of data for a Simple AD or AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory directory. These snapshots can be used to perform a point-in-time restore for your directory.

Note

You cannot take snapshots of AD Connector directories.

Topics

- [Creating a Snapshot of Your Directory](#) (p. 89)
- [Restoring Your Directory from a Snapshot](#) (p. 89)
- [Deleting a Snapshot](#) (p. 90)

Creating a Snapshot of Your Directory

A snapshot can be used to restore your directory to what it was at the point in time that the snapshot was taken. To create a manual snapshot of your directory, perform the following steps.

Note

You are limited to 5 manual snapshots for each directory. If you have already reached this limit, you must delete one of your existing manual snapshots before you can create another.

To create a manual snapshot

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, select **Directories**.
2. On the **Directories** page, choose your directory ID.
3. On the **Directory details** page, select the **Maintenance** tab.
4. In the **Snapshots** section, choose **Actions**, and then select **Create snapshot**.
5. In the **Create directory snapshot** dialog box, provide a name for the snapshot, if desired. When ready, choose **Create**.

Depending on the size of your directory, it may take several minutes to create the snapshot. When the snapshot is ready, the **Status** value changes to **Completed**.

Restoring Your Directory from a Snapshot

Restoring a directory from a snapshot is equivalent to moving the directory back in time. Directory snapshots are unique to the directory they were created from. A snapshot can only be restored to the directory from which it was created.

Warning

We recommend that you contact the [AWS Support Center](#) before any snapshot restore; we may be able to help you avoid the need to do a snapshot restore. Any restore from snapshot can result in data loss as they are a point in time. It is important you understand that all of the DCs and DNS servers associated with the directory will be offline until the restore operation has been completed.

To restore your directory from a snapshot, perform the following steps.

To restore a directory from a snapshot

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, select **Directories**.
2. On the **Directories** page, choose your directory ID.
3. On the **Directory details** page, select the **Maintenance** tab.
4. In the **Snapshots** section, select a snapshot in the list, choose **Actions**, and then select **Restore snapshot**.
5. Review the information in the **Restore directory snapshot** dialog box, and choose **Restore**.

For a Simple AD directory, it may take several minutes for the directory to be restored. For a AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory, it can take from two to three hours. When it has been successfully restored, the **Status** value of the directory changes to **Active**. Any changes made to the directory after the snapshot date are overwritten.

Deleting a Snapshot

To delete a snapshot

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, select **Directories**.
2. On the **Directories** page, choose your directory ID.
3. On the **Directory details** page, select the **Maintenance** tab.
4. In the **Snapshots** section, choose **Actions**, and then select **Delete snapshot**.
5. Verify that you want to delete the snapshot, and then choose **Delete**.

View Directory Information

You can view detailed information about a directory.

To view detailed directory information

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, select **Directories**.
2. Click the directory ID link for your directory. Information about the directory is displayed in the **Directory details** page.

For more information about the **Status** field, see [Understanding Your Directory Status \(p. 32\)](#).

Enable Access to AWS Applications and Services

AWS Directory Service can give other AWS applications and services, such as Amazon WorkSpaces, access to your directory users. The following AWS applications and services can be enabled or disabled to work with AWS Directory Service.

AWS application / service	More information...
Amazon Chime	For more information, see the Amazon Chime Administration Guide .
Amazon Connect	For more information, see the Amazon Connect Administration Guide .

AWS application / service	More information...
Amazon FSx for Windows File Server	For more information, see Using Amazon FSx with AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory in the <i>Amazon FSx for Windows File Server User Guide</i> .
Amazon QuickSight	For more information, see the Amazon QuickSight User Guide .
Amazon Relational Database Service	For more information, see the Amazon RDS User Guide .
Amazon WorkDocs	For more information, see the Amazon WorkDocs Administration Guide .
Amazon WorkMail	For more information, see the Amazon WorkMail Administrator Guide .
Amazon WorkSpaces	<p>You can create a Simple AD, AWS Managed Microsoft AD, or AD Connector directly from Amazon WorkSpaces. Simply launch Advanced Setup when creating your Workspace.</p> <p>For more information, see the Amazon WorkSpaces Administration Guide.</p>
Amazon WorkSpaces Application Manager	For more information, see the Amazon WAM Administration Guide .
AWS Management Console	For more information, see Enable Access to the AWS Management Console with AD Credentials (p. 102).

Once enabled, you manage access to your directories in the console of the application or service that you want to give access to your directory. To find the AWS applications and services links described above in the AWS Directory Service console, perform the following steps.

To display the applications and services for a directory

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, choose **Directories**.
2. On the **Directories** page, choose your directory ID.
3. On the **Directory details** page, select the **Application management** tab.
4. Review the list under the **AWS apps & services** section.

Topics

- [Creating an Access URL](#) (p. 184)
- [Single Sign-On](#) (p. 185)

Creating an Access URL

An access URL is used with AWS applications and services, such as Amazon WorkSpaces, to reach a login page that is associated with your directory. The URL must be unique globally. You can create an access URL for your directory by performing the following steps.

Warning

Once you create an application access URL for this directory, it cannot be changed. After an access URL is created, it cannot be used by others. If you delete your directory, the access URL is also deleted and can then be used by any other account.

To create an access URL

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, select **Directories**.
2. On the **Directories** page, choose your directory ID.
3. On the **Directory details** page, select the **Application management** tab.
4. In the **Application access URL** section, if an access URL has not been assigned to the directory, the **Create** button is displayed. Enter a directory alias and choose **Create**. If an **Entity Already Exists** error is returned, the specified directory alias has already been allocated. Choose another alias and repeat this procedure.

Your access URL is displayed in the format `<alias>.awsapps.com`.

Single Sign-On

AWS Directory Service provides the ability to allow your users to access Amazon WorkDocs from a computer joined to the directory without having to enter their credentials separately.

Before you enable single sign-on, you need to take additional steps to enable your users web browsers to support single sign-on. Users may need to modify their web browser settings to enable single sign-on.

Note

Single sign-on only works when used on a computer that is joined to the AWS Directory Service directory. It cannot be used on computers that are not joined to the directory.

To enable or disable single sign-on with Amazon WorkDocs

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, select **Directories**.
2. On the **Directories** page, choose your directory ID.
3. On the **Directory details** page, select the **Application management** tab.
4. In the **Application access URL** section, choose **Enable** to enable single sign-on for Amazon WorkDocs.

If you do not see the **Enable** button, you may need to first create an Access URL before this option will be displayed. For more information about how to create an access URL, see [Creating an Access URL \(p. 95\)](#).

5. In the **Enable Single Sign-On for this directory** dialog box, choose **Enable**. Single sign-on is enabled for the directory.

If the directory is an AD Connector directory and the AD Connector service account does not have permission to add a service principal name, you are prompted for the username and password for a directory user that has this permission. These credentials are only used to enable single sign-on and are not stored by the service. The AD Connector service account is not changed.

6. If you later want to disable single sign-on with Amazon WorkDocs, choose **Disable**, and then in the **Disable Single Sign-On for this directory** dialog box, choose **Disable** again.

If the directory is an AD Connector directory and the AD Connector service account does not have permission to remove a service principal name, you are prompted for the username and password for a directory user that has this permission. These credentials are only used to disable single sign-on and are not stored by the service. The AD Connector service account is not changed.

Topics

- [Single Sign-On for IE and Chrome \(p. 96\)](#)
- [Single Sign-On for Firefox \(p. 101\)](#)

Single Sign-On for IE and Chrome

To allow Microsoft Internet Explorer (IE) and Google Chrome browsers to support single sign-on, the following tasks must be performed on the client computer:

- Add your access URL (e.g., <https://<alias>.awsapps.com>) to the list of approved sites for single sign-on.
- Enable active scripting (JavaScript).
- Allow automatic logon.
- Enable integrated authentication.

You or your users can perform these tasks manually, or you can change these settings using Group Policy settings.

Topics

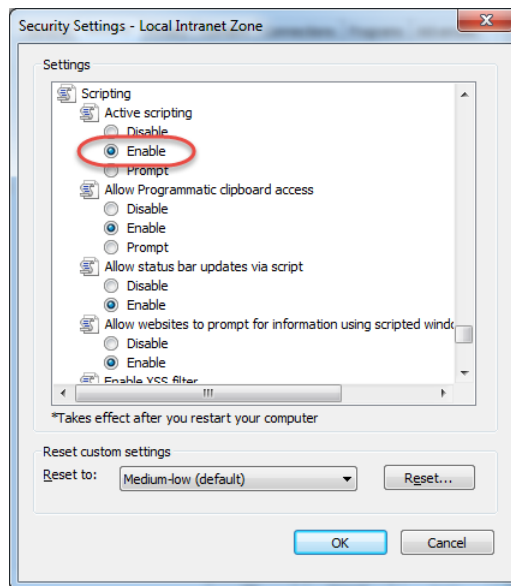
- [Manual Update for Single Sign-On on Windows \(p. 96\)](#)
- [Manual Update for Single Sign-On on OS X \(p. 98\)](#)
- [Group Policy Settings for Single Sign-On \(p. 98\)](#)

Manual Update for Single Sign-On on Windows

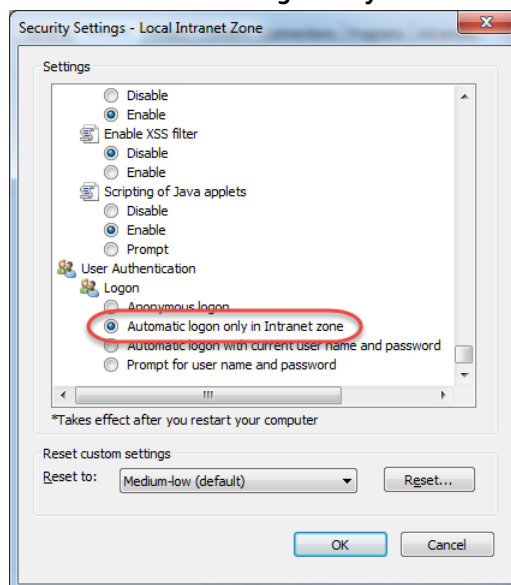
To manually enable single sign-on on a Windows computer, perform the following steps on the client computer. Some of these settings may already be set correctly.

To manually enable single sign-on for Internet Explorer and Chrome on Windows

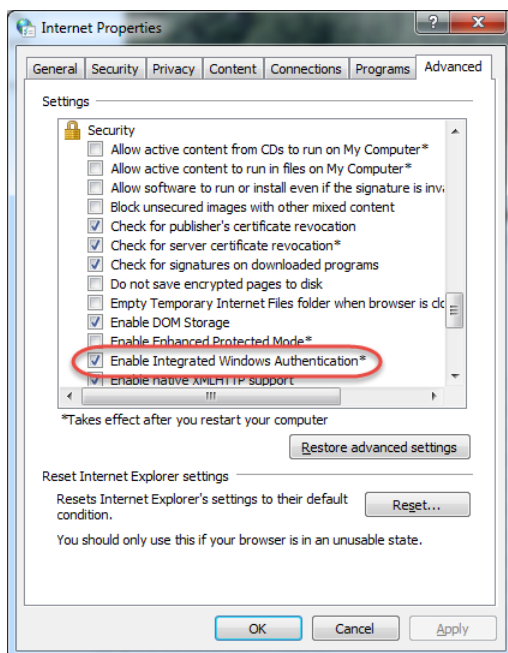
1. To open the **Internet Properties** dialog box, choose the **Start** menu, type **Internet Options** in the search box, and choose **Internet Options**.
2. Add your access URL to the list of approved sites for single sign-on by performing the following steps:
 - a. In the **Internet Properties** dialog box, select the **Security** tab.
 - b. Select **Local intranet** and choose **Sites**.
 - c. In the **Local intranet** dialog box, choose **Advanced**.
 - d. Add your access URL to the list of websites and choose **Close**.
 - e. In the **Local intranet** dialog box, choose **OK**.
3. To enable active scripting, perform the following steps:
 - a. In the **Security** tab of the **Internet Properties** dialog box, choose **Custom level**.
 - b. In the **Security Settings - Local Intranet Zone** dialog box, scroll down to **Scripting** and select **Enable** under **Active scripting**.



- c. In the **Security Settings - Local Intranet Zone** dialog box, choose **OK**.
4. To enable automatic login, perform the following steps:
 - a. In the **Security** tab of the **Internet Properties** dialog box, choose **Custom level**.
 - b. In the **Security Settings - Local Intranet Zone** dialog box, scroll down to **User Authentication** and select **Automatic login only in Intranet zone** under **Logon**.



- c. In the **Security Settings - Local Intranet Zone** dialog box, choose **OK**.
- d. In the **Security Settings - Local Intranet Zone** dialog box, choose **OK**.
5. To enable integrated authentication, perform the following steps:
 - a. In the **Internet Properties** dialog box, select the **Advanced** tab.
 - b. Scroll down to **Security** and select **Enable Integrated Windows Authentication**.



- c. In the **Internet Properties** dialog box, choose **OK**.
6. Close and re-open your browser to have these changes take effect.

Manual Update for Single Sign-On on OS X

To manually enable single sign-on for Chrome on OS X, perform the following steps on the client computer. You will need administrator rights on your computer to complete these steps.

To manually enable single sign-on for Chrome on OS X

1. Add your access URL to the [AuthServerWhitelist](#) policy by running the following command:

```
defaults write com.google.Chrome AuthServerWhitelist "https://<alias>.awsapps.com"
```

2. Open **System Preferences**, go to the **Profiles** panel, and delete the Chrome Kerberos Configuration profile.
3. Restart Chrome and open chrome://policy in Chrome to confirm that the new settings are in place.

Group Policy Settings for Single Sign-On

The domain administrator can implement Group Policy settings to make the single sign-on changes on client computers that are joined to the domain.

Note

If you manage the Chrome web browsers on the computers in your domain with Chrome policies, you must add your access URL to the [AuthServerWhitelist](#) policy. For more information about setting Chrome policies, go to [Policy Settings in Chrome](#).

To enable single sign-on for Internet Explorer and Chrome using Group Policy settings

1. Create a new Group Policy object by performing the following steps:
 - a. Open the Group Policy Management tool, navigate to your domain and select **Group Policy Objects**.

- ## Action

Hive

Path

The value for *<alias>* is derived from your access URL. If your access URL is `https://examplecorp.awsapps.com`, the alias is `examplecorp`, and the registry key will be `Software\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Internet Settings\ZoneMap\Domains\awsapps.com\examplecorp`.

Value name

Value type

Value data

1

- Version 1.0
189

- b. In the policy tree, navigate to **Computer Configuration > Policies > Administrative Templates > Windows Components > Internet Explorer > Internet Control Panel > Security Page > Intranet Zone**.
 - c. In the **Intranet Zone** list, open the context (right-click) menu for **Logon options** and choose **Edit**.
 - d. In the **Logon options** dialog box, enter the following settings and choose **OK**:
 - Select the **Enabled** radio button.
 - Under **Options** set **Logon options to Automatic logon only in Intranet zone**.
5. To enable integrated authentication, perform the following steps:
 - a. In the Group Policy Management tool, navigate to your domain, select **Group Policy Objects**, open the context (right-click) menu for your SSO policy, and choose **Edit**.
 - b. In the policy tree, navigate to **User Configuration > Preferences > Windows Settings**.
 - c. In the **Windows Settings** list, open the context (right-click) menu for **Registry** and choose **New registry item**.
 - d. In the **New Registry Properties** dialog box, enter the following settings and choose **OK**:

Action

Update

Hive

HKEY_CURRENT_USER

Path

Software\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Internet Settings

Value name

EnableNegotiate

Value type

REG_DWORD

Value data

1

6. Close the **Group Policy Management Editor** window if it is still open.
7. Assign the new policy to your domain by following these steps:
 - a. In the Group Policy Management tree, open the context (right-click) menu for your domain and choose **Link an Existing GPO**.
 - b. In the **Group Policy Objects** list, select your SSO policy and choose **OK**.

These changes will take effect after the next Group Policy update on the client, or the next time the user logs in.

Single Sign-On for Firefox

To allow Mozilla Firefox browser to support single sign-on, add your access URL (e.g., <https://<alias>.awsapps.com>) to the list of approved sites for single sign-on. This can be done manually, or automated with a script.

Topics

- [Manual Update for Single Sign-On \(p. 101\)](#)

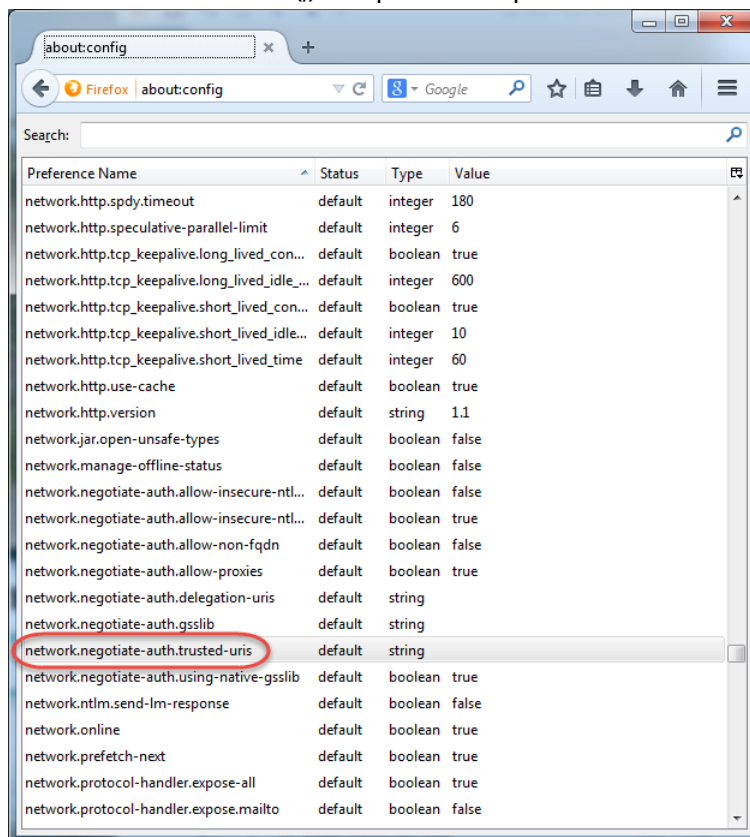
- [Automatic Update for Single Sign-On \(p. 101\)](#)

Manual Update for Single Sign-On

To manually add your access URL to the list of approved sites in Firefox, perform the following steps on the client computer.

To manually add your access URL to the list of approved sites in Firefox

1. Open Firefox and open the `about:config` page.
2. Open the `network.negotiate-auth.trusted-uris` preference and add your access URL to the list of sites. Use a comma (,) to separate multiple entries.



Automatic Update for Single Sign-On

As a domain administrator, you can use a script to add your access URL to the Firefox `network.negotiate-auth.trusted-uris` user preference on all computers on your network. For more information, go to <https://support.mozilla.org/en-US/questions/939037>.

Enable Access to the AWS Management Console with AD Credentials

AWS Directory Service allows you to grant members of your directory access to the AWS Management Console. By default, your directory members do not have access to any AWS resources. You assign IAM roles to your directory members to give them access to the various AWS services and resources. The IAM role defines the services, resources, and level of access that your directory members have.

Before you can grant console access to your directory members, your directory must have an access URL. For more information about how to view directory details and get your access URL, see [View Directory Information](#) (p. 90). For more information about how to create an access URL, see [Creating an Access URL](#) (p. 95).

For more information about how to create and assign IAM roles to your directory members, see [Grant Users and Groups Access to AWS Resources](#) (p. 90).

Topics

- [Enable AWS Management Console Access](#) (p. 102)
- [Disable AWS Management Console Access](#) (p. 102)
- [Set Login Session Length](#) (p. 103)

Related AWS Security Blog Article

- [How to Access the AWS Management Console Using AWS Managed Microsoft AD and Your On-Premises Credentials](#)

Enable AWS Management Console Access

By default, console access is not enabled for any directory. To enable console access for your directory users and groups, perform the following steps:

To enable console access

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, choose **Directories**.
2. On the **Directories** page, choose your directory ID.
3. On the **Directory details** page, select the **Application management** tab.
4. Under the **AWS Management Console** section, choose **Enable**. Console access is now enabled for your directory.

Before users can sign-in to the console with your access URL, you must first add your users to the role. For general information about assigning users to IAM roles, see [Assigning Users or Groups to an Existing Role](#) (p. 92). After the IAM roles have been assigned, users can then access the console using your access URL. For example, if your directory access URL is example-corp.awsapps.com, the URL to access the console is <https://example-corp.awsapps.com/console/>.

Disable AWS Management Console Access

To disable console access for your directory users and groups, perform the following steps:

To disable console access

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, choose **Directories**.
2. On the **Directories** page, choose your directory ID.
3. On the **Directory details** page, select the **Application management** tab.
4. Under the **AWS Management Console** section, choose **Disable**. Console access is now disabled for your directory.
5. If any IAM roles have been assigned to users or groups in the directory, the **Disable** button may be unavailable. In this case, you must remove all IAM role assignments for the directory before proceeding, including assignments for users or groups in your directory that have been deleted, which will show as **Deleted User** or **Deleted Group**.

After all IAM role assignments have been removed, repeat the steps above.

Set Login Session Length

By default, users have 1 hour to use their session after successfully signing in to the console before they are logged out. After that, users must sign in again to start the next 1 hour session before being logged off again. You can use the following procedure to change the length of time to up to 12 hours per session.

To set login session length

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, choose **Directories**.
2. On the **Directories** page, choose your directory ID.
3. On the **Directory details** page, select the **Application management** tab.
4. Under the **AWS apps & services** section, choose **AWS Management Console**.
5. In the **Manage Access to AWS Resource** dialog box, choose **Continue**.
6. In the **Assign users and groups to IAM roles** page, under **Set login session length**, edit the numbered value, and then choose **Save**.

Tutorial: Create a Simple AD Directory

The following tutorial walks you through all of the steps necessary to set up an AWS Directory Service Simple AD directory. It is intended to get you started with AWS Directory Service quickly and easily, but is not intended to be used in a large-scale production environment.

Topics

- [Prerequisites](#) (p. 193)
- [Step 1: Create and Configure Your VPC](#) (p. 193)
- [Step 2: Create Your Simple AD Directory](#) (p. 195)

Prerequisites

This tutorial assumes the following:

- You have an active AWS account.
- Your account has not reached its limit of VPCs for the region in which you want to use AWS Directory Service. For more information about Amazon VPC, see [What is Amazon VPC?](#) and [Subnets in Your VPC](#) in the *Amazon VPC User Guide*.
- You do not have an existing VPC in the region with a CIDR of 10.0.0.0/16.

Step 1: Create and Configure Your VPC

The following sections demonstrate how to create and configure a VPC for use with AWS Directory Service.

Topics

- [Create a New VPC](#) (p. 194)
- [Add a Second Subnet](#) (p. 194)

Create a New VPC

This tutorial uses one of the VPC creation wizards to create the following:

- The VPC
- One of the subnets
- An Internet gateway

To create your VPC using the VPC wizard

1. Open the Amazon VPC console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/vpc/>.
2. In the navigation pane, click **VPC Dashboard**. If you do not already have any VPC resources, locate the **Your Virtual Private Cloud** area of the dashboard and click **Get started creating a VPC**. Otherwise, click **Start VPC Wizard**.
3. Select the second option, **VPC with a Single Public Subnet**, and then click **Select**.
4. Enter the following information into the wizard and click **Create VPC**.

IP CIDR block

10.0.0.0/16

VPC name

ADS VPC

Public subnet

10.0.0.0/24

Availability Zone

No Preference

Subnet name

ADS Subnet 1

Enable DNS hostnames

Leave default selection

Hardware tenancy

Default

5. It takes several minutes for the VPC to be created. After the VPC is created, proceed to the following section to add a second subnet.

Add a Second Subnet

AWS Directory Service requires two subnets in your VPC, and each subnet must be in a different Availability Zone. The VPC wizard only creates one subnet, so you must manually create the second subnet, and specify a different Availability Zone than the first subnet. Create the second subnet by performing the following steps.

To create a subnet

1. Open the Amazon VPC console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/vpc/>.
2. In the navigation pane, select **Subnets**, select the subnet with the name **ADS Subnet 1**, and select the **Summary** tab at the bottom of the page. Make a note of the Availability Zone of this subnet.

3. Click **Create Subnet** and enter the following information in the **Create Subnet** dialog box and click **Yes, Create**.

Name tag

ADS Subnet 2

VPC

Select your VPC. This is the VPC with the name ADS VPC.

Availability Zone

Select any Availability Zone other than the one noted in step 2. The two subnets used by AWS Directory Service must reside in different Availability Zones.

CIDR Block

10.0.1.0/24

Step 2: Create Your Simple AD Directory

To create a new directory, perform the following steps. Before starting this procedure, make sure you have completed the prerequisites identified in [Simple AD Prerequisites \(p. 157\)](#).

To create a Simple AD directory

1. In the [AWS Directory Service console](#) navigation pane, choose **Directories** and then choose **Set up directory**.
2. On the **Select directory type** page, choose **Simple AD**, and then choose **Next**.
3. On the **Enter directory information** page, provide the following information:

Directory size

Choose from either the **Small** or **Large** size option. For more information about sizes, see [Simple Active Directory \(p. 156\)](#).

Organization name

A unique organization name for your directory that will be used to register client devices.

This field is only available if you are creating your directory as part of launching Amazon WorkSpaces.

Directory DNS name

The fully qualified name for the directory, such as corp.example.com.

Directory NetBIOS name

The short name for the directory, such as CORP.

Administrator password

The password for the directory administrator. The directory creation process creates an administrator account with the user name Administrator and this password.

The directory administrator password is case-sensitive and must be between 8 and 64 characters in length, inclusive. It must also contain at least one character from three of the following four categories:

- Lowercase letters (a-z)
- Uppercase letters (A-Z)

- Numbers (0-9)
- Non-alphanumeric characters (~!@#\$%^&* _-+= `|{}[];'"<>.,?/)

Confirm password

Retype the administrator password.

Directory description

An optional description for the directory.

4. On the **Choose VPC and subnets** page, provide the following information, and then choose **Next**.

VPC

The VPC for the directory.

Subnets

Choose the subnets for the domain controllers. The two subnets must be in different Availability Zones.

5. On the **Review & create** page, review the directory information and make any necessary changes. When the information is correct, choose **Create directory**. It takes several minutes for the directory to be created. Once created, the **Status** value changes to **Active**.

Best Practices for Simple AD

Here are some suggestions and guidelines you should consider to avoid problems and get the most out of AWS Managed Microsoft AD.

Setting Up: Prerequisites

Consider these guidelines before creating your directory.

Verify You Have the Right Directory Type

AWS Directory Service provides multiple ways to use Microsoft Active Directory with other AWS services. You can choose the directory service with the features you need at a cost that fits your budget:

- **AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory** is a feature-rich managed Microsoft Active Directory hosted on the AWS cloud. AWS Managed Microsoft AD is your best choice if you have more than 5,000 users and need a trust relationship set up between an AWS hosted directory and your on-premises directories.
- **AD Connector** simply connects your existing on-premises Active Directory to AWS. AD Connector is your best choice when you want to use your existing on-premises directory with AWS services.
- **Simple AD** is an inexpensive Active Directory-compatible service with the common directory features. In most cases, Simple AD is the least expensive option and your best choice if you have 5,000 or fewer users and don't need the more advanced Microsoft Active Directory features.

For a more detailed comparison of AWS Directory Service options, see [Which to Choose \(p. 1\)](#).

Ensure Your VPCs and Instances are Configured Correctly

In order to connect to, manage, and use your directories, you must properly configure the VPCs that the directories are associated with. See either [AWS Managed Microsoft AD Prerequisites \(p. 9\)](#), [AD Connector Prerequisites \(p. 131\)](#), or [Simple AD Prerequisites \(p. 157\)](#) for information about the VPC security and networking requirements.

If you are adding an instance to your domain, ensure that you have connectivity and remote access to your instance as described in [Join an EC2 Instance to Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Directory \(p. 46\)](#).

Be Aware of Your Limits

Learn about the various limits for your specific directory type. The available storage and the aggregate size of your objects are the only limitations on the number of objects you may store in your directory. See either [Limits for AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 109\)](#), [Limits for AD Connector \(p. 152\)](#), or [Limits for Simple AD \(p. 198\)](#) for details about your chosen directory.

Understand Your Directory's AWS Security Group Configuration and Use

AWS creates a [security group](#) and attaches it to your directory's domain controller [elastic network interfaces](#). AWS configures the security group to block unnecessary traffic to the directory and allows necessary traffic.

Modifying the Directory Security Group

If you want to modify the security of your directories' security groups, you can do so. Make such changes only if you fully understand how security group filtering works. For more information, see [Amazon EC2 Security Groups for Linux Instances](#) in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*. Improper changes can result in loss of communications to intended computers and instances. AWS recommends that you do not attempt to open additional ports to your directory as this decreases the security of your directory. Please carefully review the [AWS Shared Responsibility Model](#).

Warning

It is technically possible for you to associate the directory's security group with other EC2 instances that you create. However, AWS recommends against this practice. AWS may have reasons to modify the security group without notice to address functional or security needs of the managed directory. Such changes affect any instances with which you associate the directory security group and may disrupt operation of the associated instances. Furthermore, associating the directory security group with your EC2 instances may create a potential security risk for your EC2 instances.

Use AWS Managed Microsoft AD If Trusts Are Required

Simple AD does not support trust relationships. If you need to establish a trust between your AWS Directory Service directory and another directory, you should use AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory.

Setting Up: Creating Your Directory

Here are some suggestions to consider as you create your directory.

Remember Your Administrator ID and Password

When you set up your directory, you provide a password for the administrator account. That account ID is *Administrator* for Simple AD. Remember the password that you create for this account; otherwise you will not be able to add objects to your directory.

Understand Username Restrictions for AWS Applications

AWS Directory Service provides support for most character formats that can be used in the construction of usernames. However, there are character restrictions that are enforced on usernames that will be used

for signing in to AWS applications, such as Amazon WorkSpaces, Amazon WorkDocs, Amazon WorkMail, or Amazon QuickSight. These restrictions require that the following characters not be used:

- Spaces
- !"#\$%&'()*+,-/;<=>?@[\\]^_`{|}~

Note

The @ symbol is allowed as long as it precedes a UPN suffix.

Programming Your Applications

Before you program your applications, consider the following:

Use the Windows DC Locator Service

When developing applications, use the Windows DC locator service or use the Dynamic DNS (DDNS) service of your AWS Managed Microsoft AD to locate domain controllers (DCs). Do not hard code applications with the address of a DC. The DC locator service helps ensure directory load is distributed and enables you to take advantage of horizontal scaling by adding domain controllers to your deployment. If you bind your application to a fixed DC and the DC undergoes patching or recovery, your application will lose access to the DC instead of using one of the remaining DCs. Furthermore, hard coding of the DC can result in hot spotting on a single DC. In severe cases, hot spotting may cause your DC to become unresponsive. Such cases may also cause AWS directory automation to flag the directory as impaired and may trigger recovery processes that replace the unresponsive DC.

Load Test Before Rolling Out to Production

Be sure to do lab testing with objects and requests that are representative of your production workload to confirm that the directory scales to the load of your application. Should you require additional capacity, you should use AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory, which enables you to add domain controllers for high performance. For more information, see [Deploy Additional Domain Controllers](#) (p. 103).

Use Efficient LDAP Queries

Broad LDAP queries to a domain controller across thousands of objects can consume significant CPU cycles in a single DC, resulting in hot spotting. This may affect applications that share the same DC during the query.

Limits for Simple AD

Generally, you should not add more than 500 users to a Small Simple AD directory and no more than 5,000 users to a Large Simple AD directory. For more flexible scaling options and additional Active Directory features, consider using AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory (Standard Edition or Enterprise Edition) instead.

The following are the default limits for Simple AD. Each limit is per region unless otherwise noted.

Simple AD Limits

Resource	Default Limit
Simple AD directories	10

Resource	Default Limit
Manual snapshots *	5 per Simple AD

* The manual snapshot limit cannot be changed.

Note

You cannot attach a public IP address to your AWS elastic network interface (ENI).

Increase Your Limit

Perform the following steps to increase your limit for a region.

To request a limit increase for a region

1. Go to the [AWS Support Center](#) page, sign in, if necessary, and click **Open a new case**.
2. Under **Regarding**, select **Service Limit Increase**.
3. Under **Limit Type**, select **AWS Directory Service**.
4. Fill in all of the necessary fields in the form and click the button at the bottom of the page for your desired method of contact.

Application Compatibility Policy for Simple AD

Simple AD is an implementation of Samba that provides many of the basic features of Active Directory. Due to the magnitude of custom and commercial off-the-shelf applications that use Active Directory, AWS does not and cannot perform formal or broad verification of third-party application compatibility with Simple AD. Although AWS works with customers in an attempt to overcome any potential application installation challenges they might encounter, we are unable to guarantee that any application is or will continue to be compatible with Simple AD.

The following third-party applications are compatible with Simple AD:

- Microsoft Internet Information Services (IIS) on the following platforms:
 - Windows Server 2003 R2
 - Windows Server 2008 R1
 - Windows Server 2008 R2
 - Windows Server 2012
 - Windows Server 2012 R2
- Microsoft SQL Server:
 - SQL Server 2005 R2 (Express, Web, and Standard editions)
 - SQL Server 2008 R2 (Express, Web, and Standard editions)
 - SQL Server 2012 (Express, Web, and Standard editions)
 - SQL Server 2014 (Express, Web, and Standard editions)
- Microsoft SharePoint:
 - SharePoint 2010 Foundation
 - SharePoint 2010 Enterprise
 - SharePoint 2013 Enterprise

Customers can choose to use AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory ([AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 8\)](#)) for a higher level of compatibility based on actual Active Directory.

Troubleshooting Simple AD

The following can help you troubleshoot some common issues you might encounter when creating or using your directory.

Topics

- [Password recovery \(p. 200\)](#)
- [I receive a "KDC can't fulfill requested option" error when adding a user to Simple AD \(p. 200\)](#)
- [I am not able to update the DNS name or IP address of an instance joined to my domain \(DNS dynamic update\) \(p. 200\)](#)
- [I cannot log onto SQL Server using a SQL Server account \(p. 200\)](#)
- [My directory is stuck in the "Requested" state \(p. 201\)](#)
- [I receive an "AZ Constrained" error when I create a directory \(p. 201\)](#)
- [Some of my users cannot authenticate with my directory \(p. 201\)](#)
- [Simple AD Directory Status Reasons \(p. 201\)](#)

Password recovery

If a user forgets a password or is having trouble signing in to either your Simple AD or AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory, you can reset their password using either the AWS Management Console, Windows PowerShell or the AWS CLI.

For more information, see [Reset a User Password \(p. 163\)](#).

I receive a "KDC can't fulfill requested option" error when adding a user to Simple AD

This can occur when the Samba CLI client does not correctly send the 'net' commands to all domain controllers. If you see this error message when using the 'net ads' command to add a user to your Simple AD directory, use the -S argument and specify the IP address of one of your domain controllers. If you still see the error, try the other domain controller. You can also use the Active Directory Administration Tools to add users to your directory. For more information, see [Installing the Active Directory Administration Tools \(p. 161\)](#).

I am not able to update the DNS name or IP address of an instance joined to my domain (DNS dynamic update)

DNS dynamic updates are not supported in Simple AD domains. You can instead make the changes directly by connecting to your directory using DNS Manager on an instance that is joined to your domain.

I cannot log onto SQL Server using a SQL Server account

You might receive an error if you attempt to use SQL Server Management Studio (SSMS) with a SQL Server account to log into SQL Server running on a Windows 2012 R2 EC2 instance or in Amazon RDS. The issue occurs when SSMS is run as a domain user and can result in the error "Login failed for user," even when valid credentials are provided. This is a known issue and AWS is actively working to resolve it.

To work around the issue, you can log into SQL Server with Windows Authentication instead of SQL Authentication. Or launch SSMS as a local user instead of a Simple AD domain user.

My directory is stuck in the "Requested" state

If you have a directory that has been in the "Requested" state for more than five minutes, try deleting the directory and recreating it. If this problem persists, contact the [AWS Support Center](#).

I receive an "AZ Constrained" error when I create a directory

Some AWS accounts created before 2012 might have access to Availability Zones in the US East (N. Virginia), US West (N. California), or Asia Pacific (Tokyo) region that do not support AWS Directory Service directories. If you receive an error such as this when creating a directory, choose a subnet in a different Availability Zone and try to create the directory again.

Some of my users cannot authenticate with my directory

Your user accounts must have Kerberos preauthentication enabled. This is the default setting for new user accounts, and it should not be modified. For more information about this setting, go to [Preauthentication](#) on Microsoft TechNet.

Topics

- [Simple AD Directory Status Reasons \(p. 201\)](#)

Simple AD Directory Status Reasons

When a directory is impaired or inoperable, the directory status message contains additional information. The status message is displayed in the AWS Directory Service console, or returned in the [DirectoryDescription.StageReason](#) member by the [DescribeDirectories](#) API. For more information about the directory status, see [Understanding Your Directory Status \(p. 32\)](#).

The following are the status messages for a Simple AD directory:

Topics

- [The directory service's elastic network interface is not attached \(p. 201\)](#)
- [Issue\(s\) detected by instance \(p. 202\)](#)
- [The critical AWS Directory Service reserved user is missing from the directory \(p. 202\)](#)
- [The critical AWS Directory Service reserved user needs to belong to the Domain Admins AD group \(p. 202\)](#)
- [The critical AWS Directory Service reserved user is disabled \(p. 203\)](#)
- [The main domain controller does not have all FSMO roles \(p. 203\)](#)
- [Domain controller replication failures \(p. 203\)](#)

The directory service's elastic network interface is not attached

Description

The critical elastic network interface (ENI) that was created on your behalf during directory creation to establish network connectivity with your VPC is not attached to the directory instance. AWS

applications backed by this directory will not be functional. Your directory cannot connect to your on-premises network.

Troubleshooting

If the ENI is detached but still exists, contact AWS Support. If the ENI is deleted, there is no way to resolve the issue and your directory is permanently unusable. You must delete the directory and create a new one.

Issue(s) detected by instance

Description

An internal error was detected by the instance. This usually signifies that the monitoring service is actively attempting to recover the impaired instances.

Troubleshooting

In most cases, this is a transient issue, and the directory eventually returns to the Active state. If the problem persists, contact AWS Support for more assistance.

The critical AWS Directory Service reserved user is missing from the directory

Description

When a Simple AD is created, AWS Directory Service creates a service account in the directory with the name `AWSAdminD-xxxxxxxxxx`. This error is received when this service account cannot be found. Without this account, AWS Directory Service cannot perform administrative functions on the directory, rendering the directory unusable.

Troubleshooting

To correct this issue, restore the directory to a previous snapshot that was created before the service account was deleted. Automatic snapshots are taken of your Simple AD directory one time a day. If it has been more than five days after this account was deleted, you may not be able to restore the directory to a state where this account exists. If you are not able to restore the directory from a snapshot where this account exists, your directory may become permanently unusable. If this is the case, you must delete your directory and create a new one.

The critical AWS Directory Service reserved user needs to belong to the Domain Admins AD group

Description

When a Simple AD is created, AWS Directory Service creates a service account in the directory with the name `AWSAdminD-xxxxxxxxxx`. This error is received when this service account is not a member of the `Domain Admins` group. Membership in this group is needed to give AWS Directory Service the privileges it needs to perform maintenance and recovery operations, such as transferring FSMO roles, domain joining new directory controllers, and restoring from snapshots.

Troubleshooting

Use the Active Directory Users and Computers tool to re-add the service account to the `Domain Admins` group.

The critical AWS Directory Service reserved user is disabled

Description

When a Simple AD is created, AWS Directory Service creates a service account in the directory with the name `AWSAdminD-xxxxxxxxxx`. This error is received when this service account is disabled. This account must be enabled so that AWS Directory Service can perform maintenance and recovery operations on the directory.

Troubleshooting

Use the Active Directory Users and Computers tool to re-enable the service account.

The main domain controller does not have all FSMO roles

Description

All the FSMO roles are not owned by the Simple AD directory controller. AWS Directory Service cannot guarantee certain behavior and functionality if the FSMO roles do not belong to the correct Simple AD directory controller.

Troubleshooting

Use Active Directory tools to move the FSMO roles back to the original working directory controller. For more information about moving the FSMO roles, go to <https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/kb/324801>. If this does not correct the problem, please contact AWS Support for more assistance.

Domain controller replication failures

Description

The Simple AD directory controllers are failing to replicate with one another. This can be caused by one or more of the following issues:

- The security groups for the directory controllers does not have the correct ports open.
- The network ACLs are too restrictive.
- The VPC route table is not routing network traffic between the directory controllers correctly.
- Another instance has been promoted to a domain controller in the directory.

Troubleshooting

For more information about your VPC network requirements, see either AWS Managed Microsoft AD [AWS Managed Microsoft AD Prerequisites \(p. 9\)](#), AD Connector [AD Connector Prerequisites \(p. 131\)](#), or Simple AD [Simple AD Prerequisites \(p. 157\)](#). If there is an unknown domain controller in your directory, you must demote it. If your VPC network setup is correct, but the error persists, please contact AWS Support for more assistance.

Security in AWS Directory Service

Cloud security at AWS is the highest priority. As an AWS customer, you benefit from a data center and network architecture that is built to meet the requirements of the most security-sensitive organizations.

Security is a shared responsibility between AWS and you. The [shared responsibility model](#) describes this as security *of* the cloud and security *in* the cloud:

- **Security of the cloud** – AWS is responsible for protecting the infrastructure that runs AWS services in the AWS Cloud. AWS also provides you with services that you can use securely. Third-party auditors regularly test and verify the effectiveness of our security as part of the [AWS compliance programs](#). To learn about the compliance programs that apply to AWS Directory Service, see [AWS Services in Scope by Compliance Program](#).
- **Security in the cloud** – Your responsibility is determined by the AWS service that you use. You are also responsible for other factors including the sensitivity of your data, your company's requirements, and applicable laws and regulations.

This documentation helps you understand how to apply the shared responsibility model when using AWS Directory Service. The following topics show you how to configure AWS Directory Service to meet your security and compliance objectives. You also learn how to use other AWS services that help you to monitor and secure your AWS Directory Service resources.

Security Topics

The following security topics can be found in this section:

- [Identity and Access Management for AWS Directory Service \(p. 205\)](#)
- [Logging and Monitoring in AWS Directory Service \(p. 216\)](#)
- [Compliance Validation for AWS Directory Service \(p. 216\)](#)
- [Resilience in AWS Directory Service \(p. 216\)](#)
- [Infrastructure Security in AWS Directory Service \(p. 217\)](#)

Additional Security Topics

The following additional security topics can be found in this guide:

Accounts, Trusts, and AWS Resource Access

- [Admin Account \(p. 14\)](#)
- [Group Managed Service Accounts \(p. 17\)](#)
- [When to Create a Trust Relationship \(p. 64\)](#)
- [Kerberos Constrained Delegation \(p. 17\)](#)
- [Grant Users and Groups Access to AWS Resources \(p. 90\)](#)
- [Enable Access to AWS Applications and Services \(p. 94\)](#)

Secure Your Directory

- [Secure Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD Directory \(p. 21\)](#)
- [Secure Your AD Connector Directory \(p. 142\)](#)

Logging and Monitoring

- [Monitor Your AWS Managed Microsoft AD](#) (p. 32)
- [Monitor Your AD Connector Directory](#) (p. 144)

Resilience

- [Patching and Maintenance for AWS Managed Microsoft AD](#) (p. 16)

Identity and Access Management for AWS Directory Service

Access to AWS Directory Service requires credentials that AWS can use to authenticate your requests. Those credentials must have permissions to access AWS resources, such as an AWS Directory Service directory. The following sections provide details on how you can use [AWS Identity and Access Management \(IAM\)](#) and AWS Directory Service to help secure your resources by controlling who can access them:

- [Authentication](#) (p. 205)
- [Access Control](#) (p. 206)

Authentication

You can access AWS as any of the following types of identities:

- **AWS account root user** – When you first create an AWS account, you begin with a single sign-in identity that has complete access to all AWS services and resources in the account. This identity is called the AWS account *root user* and is accessed by signing in with the email address and password that you used to create the account. We strongly recommend that you do not use the root user for your everyday tasks, even the administrative ones. Instead, adhere to the [best practice of using the root user only to create your first IAM user](#). Then securely lock away the root user credentials and use them to perform only a few account and service management tasks.
- **IAM user** – An [IAM user](#) is an identity within your AWS account that has specific custom permissions (for example, permissions to create a directory in AWS Directory Service). You can use an IAM user name and password to sign in to secure AWS webpages like the [AWS Management Console](#), [AWS Discussion Forums](#), or the [AWS Support Center](#).

In addition to a user name and password, you can also generate [access keys](#) for each user. You can use these keys when you access AWS services programmatically, either through [one of the several SDKs](#) or by using the [AWS Command Line Interface \(CLI\)](#). The SDK and CLI tools use the access keys to cryptographically sign your request. If you don't use AWS tools, you must sign the request yourself. AWS Directory Service supports *Signature Version 4*, a protocol for authenticating inbound API requests. For more information about authenticating requests, see [Signature Version 4 Signing Process](#) in the *AWS General Reference*.

- **IAM role** – An [IAM role](#) is an IAM identity that you can create in your account that has specific permissions. An IAM role is similar to an IAM user in that it is an AWS identity with permissions policies that determine what the identity can and cannot do in AWS. However, instead of being uniquely

associated with one person, a role is intended to be assumable by anyone who needs it. Also, a role does not have standard long-term credentials such as a password or access keys associated with it. Instead, when you assume a role, it provides you with temporary security credentials for your role session. IAM roles with temporary credentials are useful in the following situations:

- **Federated user access** – Instead of creating an IAM user, you can use existing identities from AWS Directory Service, your enterprise user directory, or a web identity provider. These are known as *federated users*. AWS assigns a role to a federated user when access is requested through an [identity provider](#). For more information about federated users, see [Federated Users and Roles](#) in the *IAM User Guide*.
- **AWS service access** – A service role is an IAM role that a service assumes to perform actions in your account on your behalf. When you set up some AWS service environments, you must define a role for the service to assume. This service role must include all the permissions that are required for the service to access the AWS resources that it needs. Service roles vary from service to service, but many allow you to choose your permissions as long as you meet the documented requirements for that service. Service roles provide access only within your account and cannot be used to grant access to services in other accounts. You can create, modify, and delete a service role from within IAM. For example, you can create a role that allows Amazon Redshift to access an Amazon S3 bucket on your behalf and then load data from that bucket into an Amazon Redshift cluster. For more information, see [Creating a Role to Delegate Permissions to an AWS Service](#) in the *IAM User Guide*.
- **Applications running on Amazon EC2** – You can use an IAM role to manage temporary credentials for applications that are running on an EC2 instance and making AWS CLI or AWS API requests. This is preferable to storing access keys within the EC2 instance. To assign an AWS role to an EC2 instance and make it available to all of its applications, you create an instance profile that is attached to the instance. An instance profile contains the role and enables programs that are running on the EC2 instance to get temporary credentials. For more information, see [Using an IAM Role to Grant Permissions to Applications Running on Amazon EC2 Instances](#) in the *IAM User Guide*.

Access Control

You can have valid credentials to authenticate your requests, but unless you have permissions you cannot create or access AWS Directory Service resources. For example, you must have permissions to create an AWS Directory Service directory or to create a directory snapshot.

The following sections describe how to manage permissions for AWS Directory Service. We recommend that you read the overview first.

- [Overview of Managing Access Permissions to Your AWS Directory Service Resources](#) (p. 206)
- [Using Identity-Based Policies \(IAM Policies\) for AWS Directory Service](#) (p. 210)
- [AWS Directory Service API Permissions: Actions, Resources, and Conditions Reference](#) (p. 215)

Overview of Managing Access Permissions to Your AWS Directory Service Resources

Every AWS resource is owned by an AWS account, and permissions to create or access the resources are governed by permissions policies. An account administrator can attach permissions policies to IAM identities (that is, users, groups, and roles), and some services (such as AWS Lambda) also support attaching permissions policies to resources.

Note

An *account administrator* (or administrator user) is a user with administrator privileges. For more information, see [IAM Best Practices](#) in the *IAM User Guide*.

When granting permissions, you decide who is getting the permissions, the resources they get permissions for, and the specific actions that you want to allow on those resources.

Topics

- [AWS Directory Service Resources and Operations](#) (p. 207)
- [Understanding Resource Ownership](#) (p. 207)
- [Managing Access to Resources](#) (p. 207)
- [Specifying Policy Elements: Actions, Effects, Resources, and Principals](#) (p. 209)
- [Specifying Conditions in a Policy](#) (p. 209)

AWS Directory Service Resources and Operations

In AWS Directory Service, the primary resource is a *directory*. AWS Directory Service supports directory snapshot resources as well. However, you can create snapshots only in the context of an existing directory. Therefore, a snapshot is referred to as a *subresource*.

These resources have unique Amazon Resource Names (ARNs) associated with them as shown in the following table.

Resource Type	ARN Format
Directory	<code>arn:aws:ds:region:account-id:directory/external-directory-id</code>
Snapshot	<code>arn:aws:ds:region:account-id:snapshot/external-snapshot-id</code>

AWS Directory Service provides a set of operations to work with the appropriate resources. For a list of available operations, see [Directory Service Actions](#).

Understanding Resource Ownership

A *resource owner* is the AWS account that created a resource. That is, the resource owner is the AWS account of the *principal entity* (the root account, an IAM user, or an IAM role) that authenticates the request that creates the resource. The following examples illustrate how this works:

- If you use the root account credentials of your AWS account to create an AWS Directory Service resource, such as a directory, your AWS account is the owner of that resource.
- If you create an IAM user in your AWS account and grant permissions to create AWS Directory Service resources to that user, the user can also create AWS Directory Service resources. However, your AWS account, to which the user belongs, owns the resources.
- If you create an IAM role in your AWS account with permissions to create AWS Directory Service resources, anyone who can assume the role can create AWS Directory Service resources. Your AWS account, to which the role belongs, owns the AWS Directory Service resources.

Managing Access to Resources

A *permissions policy* describes who has access to what. The following section explains the available options for creating permissions policies.

Note

This section discusses using IAM in the context of AWS Directory Service. It doesn't provide detailed information about the IAM service. For complete IAM documentation, see [What Is IAM?](#) in the *IAM User Guide*. For information about IAM policy syntax and descriptions, see [IAM JSON Policy Reference](#) in the *IAM User Guide*.

Policies attached to an IAM identity are referred to as *identity-based* policies (IAM policies) and policies attached to a resource are referred to as *resource-based* policies. AWS Directory Service supports only identity-based policies (IAM policies).

Topics

- [Identity-Based Policies \(IAM Policies\)](#) (p. 208)
- [Resource-Based Policies](#) (p. 209)

Identity-Based Policies (IAM Policies)

You can attach policies to IAM identities. For example, you can do the following:

- **Attach a permissions policy to a user or a group in your account** – An account administrator can use a permissions policy that is associated with a particular user to grant permissions for that user to create an AWS Directory Service resource, such as a new directory.
- **Attach a permissions policy to a role (grant cross-account permissions)** – You can attach an identity-based permissions policy to an IAM role to grant cross-account permissions. For example, the administrator in Account A can create a role to grant cross-account permissions to another AWS account (for example, Account B) or an AWS service as follows:
 1. Account A administrator creates an IAM role and attaches a permissions policy to the role that grants permissions on resources in Account A.
 2. Account A administrator attaches a trust policy to the role identifying Account B as the principal who can assume the role.
 3. Account B administrator can then delegate permissions to assume the role to any users in Account B. Doing this allows users in Account B to create or access resources in Account A. The principal in the trust policy can also be an AWS service principal if you want to grant an AWS service permissions to assume the role.

For more information about using IAM to delegate permissions, see [Access Management](#) in the *IAM User Guide*.

The following permissions policy grants permissions to a user to run all of the actions that begin with `Describe`. These actions show information about an AWS Directory Service resource, such as a directory or snapshot. Note that the wildcard character (*) in the `Resource` element indicates that the actions are allowed for all AWS Directory Service resources owned by the account.

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": "ds:Describe*",
      "Resource": "*"
    }
  ]
}
```

For more information about using identity-based policies with AWS Directory Service, see [Using Identity-Based Policies \(IAM Policies\) for AWS Directory Service](#) (p. 210). For more information about users, groups, roles, and permissions, see [Identities \(Users, Groups, and Roles\)](#) in the *IAM User Guide*.

Resource-Based Policies

Other services, such as Amazon S3, also support resource-based permissions policies. For example, you can attach a policy to an S3 bucket to manage access permissions to that bucket. AWS Directory Service doesn't support resource-based policies.

Specifying Policy Elements: Actions, Effects, Resources, and Principals

For each AWS Directory Service resource, the service defines a set of API operations. For more information, see [AWS Directory Service Resources and Operations \(p. 207\)](#). For a list of available API operations, see [Directory Service Actions](#).

To grant permissions for these API operations, AWS Directory Service defines a set of actions that you can specify in a policy. Note that performing an API operation can require permissions for more than one action.

The following are the basic policy elements:

- **Resource** – In a policy, you use an Amazon Resource Name (ARN) to identify the resource to which the policy applies. For AWS Directory Service resources, you always use the wildcard character (*) in IAM policies. For more information, see [AWS Directory Service Resources and Operations \(p. 207\)](#).
- **Action** – You use action keywords to identify resource operations that you want to allow or deny. For example, the `ds:DescribeDirectories` permission allows the user permissions to perform the AWS Directory Service `DescribeDirectories` operation.
- **Effect** – You specify the effect when the user requests the specific action. This can be either allow or deny. If you don't explicitly grant access to (allow) a resource, access is implicitly denied. You can also explicitly deny access to a resource, which you might do to make sure that a user cannot access it, even if a different policy grants access.
- **Principal** – In identity-based policies (IAM policies), the user that the policy is attached to is the implicit principal. For resource-based policies, you specify the user, account, service, or other entity that you want to receive permissions (applies to resource-based policies only). AWS Directory Service doesn't support resource-based policies.

To learn more about IAM policy syntax and descriptions, see [IAM JSON Policy Reference](#) in the *IAM User Guide*.

For a table showing all of the AWS Directory Service API actions and the resources that they apply to, see [AWS Directory Service API Permissions: Actions, Resources, and Conditions Reference \(p. 215\)](#).

Specifying Conditions in a Policy

When you grant permissions, you can use the access policy language to specify the conditions when a policy should take effect. For example, you might want a policy to be applied only after a specific date. For more information about specifying conditions in a policy language, see [Condition](#) in the *IAM User Guide*.

To express conditions, you use predefined condition keys. There are no condition keys specific to AWS Directory Service. However, there are AWS condition keys that you can use as appropriate. For a complete list of AWS keys, see [Available Global Condition Keys](#) in the *IAM User Guide*.

Using Identity-Based Policies (IAM Policies) for AWS Directory Service

This topic provides examples of identity-based policies in which an account administrator can attach permissions policies to IAM identities (that is, users, groups, and roles).

Important

We recommend that you first review the introductory topics that explain the basic concepts and options available for you to manage access to your AWS Directory Service resources. For more information, see [Overview of Managing Access Permissions to Your AWS Directory Service Resources](#) (p. 206).

The sections in this topic cover the following:

- [Permissions Required to Use the AWS Directory Service Console](#) (p. 211)
- [AWS Managed \(Predefined\) Policies for AWS Directory Service](#) (p. 211)
- [Customer Managed Policy Examples](#) (p. 212)
- [Using Tags with IAM Policies](#) (p. 213)

The following shows an example of a permissions policy.

```
{
  "Version" : "2012-10-17",
  "Statement" : [
    {
      "Action" : [
        "ds:CreateDirectory"
      ],
      "Effect" : "Allow",
      "Resource" : "*"
    },
    {
      "Action" : [
        "iam:PassRole",
        "iam:GetRole",
        "iam:CreateRole",
        "iam:PutRolePolicy"
      ],
      "Effect" : "Allow",
      "Resource" : "*"
    },
    {
      "Action" : [
        "ec2:DescribeSubnets",
        "ec2:DescribeVpcs",
        "ec2:CreateSecurityGroup",
        "ec2>DeleteSecurityGroup",
        "ec2:CreateNetworkInterface",
        "ec2:DescribeNetworkInterfaces",
        "ec2>DeleteNetworkInterface",
        "ec2:AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress",
        "ec2:AuthorizeSecurityGroupEgress",
        "ec2:RevokeSecurityGroupIngress",
        "ec2:RevokeSecurityGroupEgress"
      ],
      "Effect" : "Allow",
      "Resource" : "*"
    }
  ]
}
```

```
}  
}
```

The policy includes the following:

- The first statement grants permission to create a AWS Directory Service directory. AWS Directory Service doesn't support permissions for this particular action at the resource-level. Therefore, the policy specifies a wildcard character (*) as the Resource value.
- The second statement grants permissions to certain IAM actions. The access to IAM actions is needed so that AWS Directory Service can read and create IAM roles on your behalf. The wildcard character (*) at the end of the Resource value means that the statement allows permission for the IAM actions on any IAM role. To limit this permission to a specific role, replace the wildcard character (*) in the resource ARN with the specific role name. For more information, see [IAM Actions](#).
- The third statement grants permissions to a specific set of Amazon EC2 resources that are necessary to allow AWS Directory Service to create, configure, and destroy its directories. The wildcard character (*) at the end of the Resource value means that the statement allows permission for the EC2 actions on any EC2 resource or subresource. To limit this permission to a specific role, replace the wildcard character (*) in the resource ARN with the specific resource or subresource. For more information, see [Amazon EC2 Actions](#)

The policy doesn't specify the Principal element because in an identity-based policy you don't specify the principal who gets the permission. When you attach policy to a user, the user is the implicit principal. When you attach a permission policy to an IAM role, the principal identified in the role's trust policy gets the permissions.

For a table showing all of the AWS Directory Service API actions and the resources that they apply to, see [AWS Directory Service API Permissions: Actions, Resources, and Conditions Reference \(p. 215\)](#).

Permissions Required to Use the AWS Directory Service Console

For a user to work with the AWS Directory Service console, that user must have permissions listed in the preceding policy or the permissions granted by the Directory Service Full Access Role or Directory Service Read Only role, described in [AWS Managed \(Predefined\) Policies for AWS Directory Service \(p. 211\)](#).

If you create an IAM policy that is more restrictive than the minimum required permissions, the console won't function as intended for users with that IAM policy.

AWS Managed (Predefined) Policies for AWS Directory Service

AWS addresses many common use cases by providing standalone IAM policies that are created and administered by AWS. Managed policies grant necessary permissions for common use cases so you can avoid having to investigate what permissions are needed. For more information, see [AWS Managed Policies](#) in the *IAM User Guide*.

The following AWS managed policies, which you can attach to users in your account, are specific to AWS Directory Service:

- **AWSDirectoryServiceReadOnlyAccess** – Grants a user or group read-only access to all AWS Directory Service resources, EC2 subnets, EC2 network interfaces, and Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topics and subscriptions for the root AWS account. For more information, see [Using AWS Managed Policies with AWS Directory Service \(p. 93\)](#).
- **AWSDirectoryServiceFullAccess** – Grants a user or group the following:
 - Full access to AWS Directory Service
 - Access to key Amazon EC2 services required to use AWS Directory Service
 - Ability to list Amazon SNS topics

- Ability to create, manage, and delete Amazon SNS topics with a name beginning with "DirectoryMonitoring"

For more information, see [Using AWS Managed Policies with AWS Directory Service \(p. 93\)](#).

In addition, there are other AWS managed policies that are suitable for use with other IAM roles. These policies are assigned to the roles that are associated with users in your AWS Directory Service directory. These policies are required for those users to have access to other AWS resources, such as Amazon EC2. For more information, see [Grant Users and Groups Access to AWS Resources \(p. 90\)](#).

You can also create custom IAM policies that allow users to access the required API actions and resources. You can attach these custom policies to the IAM users or groups that require those permissions.

Customer Managed Policy Examples

In this section, you can find example user policies that grant permissions for various AWS Directory Service actions.

Note

All examples use the US West (Oregon) Region (us-west-2) and contain fictitious account IDs.

Examples

- [Example 1: Allow a User to Perform Any Describe Action on Any AWS Directory Service Resource \(p. 212\)](#)
- [Example 2: Allow a User to Create a Directory \(p. 212\)](#)

Example 1: Allow a User to Perform Any Describe Action on Any AWS Directory Service Resource

The following permissions policy grants permissions to a user to run all of the actions that begin with `Describe`. These actions show information about an AWS Directory Service resource, such as a directory or snapshot. Note that the wildcard character (*) in the `Resource` element indicates that the actions are allowed for all AWS Directory Service resources owned by the account.

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": "ds:Describe*",
      "Resource": "*"
    }
  ]
}
```

Example 2: Allow a User to Create a Directory

The following permissions policy grants permissions to allow a user to create a directory and all other related resources, such as snapshots and trusts. In order to do so, permissions to certain Amazon EC2 services are also required.

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
```

```
        "ds:Create*",
        "ec2:AuthorizeSecurityGroupEgress",
        "ec2:AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress",
        "ec2:CreateNetworkInterface",
        "ec2:CreateSecurityGroup",
        "ec2>DeleteNetworkInterface",
        "ec2>DeleteSecurityGroup",
        "ec2:DescribeNetworkInterfaces",
        "ec2:DescribeSubnets",
        "ec2:DescribeVpcs",
        "ec2:RevokeSecurityGroupEgress",
        "ec2:RevokeSecurityGroupIngress"
      ],
      "Resource": "*"
    ]
  }
}
```

Using Tags with IAM Policies

You can apply tag-based resource-level permissions in the IAM policies you use for most AWS Directory Service API actions. This gives you better control over what resources a user can create, modify, or use. You use the `Condition` element (also called the `Condition` block) with the following condition context keys and values in an IAM policy to control user access (permissions) based on a resource's tags:

- Use `aws:ResourceTag/tag-key: tag-value` to allow or deny user actions on resources with specific tags.
- Use `aws:ResourceTag/tag-key: tag-value` to require that a specific tag be used (or not used) when making an API request to create or modify a resource that allows tags.
- Use `aws:TagKeys: [tag-key, ...]` to require that a specific set of tag keys be used (or not used) when making an API request to create or modify a resource that allows tags.

Note

The condition context keys and values in an IAM policy apply only to those AWS Directory Service actions where an identifier for a resource capable of being tagged is a required parameter.

[Controlling Access Using Tags](#) in the *IAM User Guide* has additional information on using tags. The [IAM JSON Policy Reference](#) section of that guide has detailed syntax, descriptions, and examples of the elements, variables, and evaluation logic of JSON policies in IAM.

The following tag policy example allows all `ds` calls as long as it contains the tag key-value pair `"fooKey":"fooValue"`.

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Sid": "VisualEditor0",
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "ds:*"
      ],
      "Resource": "*",
      "Condition": {
        "StringEquals": {
          "aws:ResourceTag/fooKey": "fooValue"
        }
      }
    }
  ]
}
```

```
    },
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "ec2:*"
      ],
      "Resource": "*"
    }
  ]
}
```

The following resource policy example allows all ds calls as long as the resource contains the directory ID "d-1234567890".

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Sid": "VisualEditor0",
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "ds:*"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws:ds:us-east-1:123456789012:directory/d-1234567890"
    },
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "ec2:*"
      ],
      "Resource": "*"
    }
  ]
}
```

For more information about ARNs, see [Amazon Resource Names \(ARNs\) and AWS Service Namespaces](#).

The following list of AWS Directory Service API operations support tag-based resource-level permissions:

- [AcceptSharedDirectory](#)
- [AddIpRoutes](#)
- [AddTagsToResource](#)
- [CancelSchemaExtension](#)
- [CreateAlias](#)
- [CreateComputer](#)
- [CreateConditionalForwarder](#)
- [CreateSnapshot](#)
- [CreateLogSubscription](#)
- [CreateTrust](#)
- [DeleteConditionalForwarder](#)
- [DeleteDirectory](#)
- [DeleteLogSubscription](#)
- [DeleteSnapshot](#)
- [DeleteTrust](#)
- [DeregisterEventTopic](#)
- [DescribeConditionalForwarders](#)

- [DescribeDomainControllers](#)
- [DescribeEventTopics](#)
- [DescribeSharedDirectories](#)
- [DescribeSnapshots](#)
- [DescribeTrusts](#)
- [DisableRadius](#)
- [DisableSso](#)
- [EnableRadius](#)
- [EnableSso](#)
- [GetSnapshotLimits](#)
- [ListIpRoutes](#)
- [ListSchemaExtensions](#)
- [ListTagsForResource](#)
- [RegisterEventTopic](#)
- [RejectSharedDirectory](#)
- [RemoveIpRoutes](#)
- [RemoveTagsFromResource](#)
- [ResetUserPassword](#)
- [RestoreFromSnapshot](#)
- [ShareDirectory](#)
- [StartSchemaExtension](#)
- [UnshareDirectory](#)
- [UpdateConditionalForwarder](#)
- [UpdateNumberOfDomainControllers](#)
- [UpdateRadius](#)
- [UpdateTrust](#)
- [VerifyTrust](#)

AWS Directory Service API Permissions: Actions, Resources, and Conditions Reference

When you are setting up [Access Control](#) (p. 206) and writing permissions policies that you can attach to an IAM identity (identity-based policies), you can use the following table as a reference. The list includes the following:

- Each AWS Directory Service API operation
- The corresponding actions for which you can grant permissions to perform the action
- The AWS resource for which you can grant the permissions

You specify the actions in the policy's `Action` field and the resource value in the policy's `Resource` field.

Note

Some AWS applications may require use of nonpublic AWS Directory Service API operations such as `ds:AuthorizeApplication`, `ds:CheckAlias`, `ds:CreateIdentityPoolDirectory`, and `ds:UnauthorizeApplication` in their policies.

You can use AWS global condition keys in your AWS Directory Service policies to express conditions. For a complete list of AWS keys, see [Available Global Condition Keys](#) in the *IAM User Guide*.

Note

To specify an action, use the `ds:` prefix followed by the API operation name (for example, `ds:CreateDirectory`).

Related Topics

- [Access Control \(p. 206\)](#)

Logging and Monitoring in AWS Directory Service

As a best practice, you should monitor your organization to ensure that changes are logged. This helps you to ensure that any unexpected change can be investigated and unwanted changes can be rolled back. AWS Directory Service currently supports the following two AWS services so that you can monitor your organization and the activity that happens within it.

- Amazon CloudWatch Events - You can use CloudWatch Events with the AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory type. For more information, see [Enable Log Forwarding \(p. 36\)](#).
- AWS CloudTrail - You can use CloudTrail with all AWS Directory Service directory types. For more information, see [Logging AWS Directory Service API Calls with CloudTrail](#)

Compliance Validation for AWS Directory Service

Third-party auditors assess the security and compliance of AWS Directory Service as part of multiple AWS compliance programs. With AWS Managed Microsoft AD, these include SOC, PCI, FedRAMP, HIPAA, and others. For more information, see [Manage Compliance for AWS Managed Microsoft AD \(p. 31\)](#).

For a list of AWS services in scope of specific compliance programs, see [AWS Services in Scope by Compliance Program](#). For general information, see [AWS Compliance Programs](#).

You can use AWS Artifact to download third-party audit reports. For more information, see [Downloading Reports in AWS Artifact](#).

When you use AWS Directory Service, your compliance responsibility is determined by the sensitivity of your data, your company's compliance objectives, and applicable laws and regulations. AWS provides the following resources to help with compliance:

- [Security and Compliance Quick Start Guides](#) – These deployment guides discuss architectural considerations and provide steps for deploying security- and compliance-focused baseline environments on AWS.
- [Architecting for HIPAA Security and Compliance Whitepaper](#) – This whitepaper describes how companies can use AWS to create HIPAA-compliant applications.
- [AWS Compliance Resources](#) – This collection of workbooks and guides might apply to your industry and location.
- [AWS Config](#) – This AWS service assesses how well your resource configurations comply with internal practices, industry guidelines, and regulations.
- [AWS Security Hub](#) – This AWS service provides a comprehensive view of your security state within AWS that helps you check your compliance with security industry standards and best practices.

Resilience in AWS Directory Service

The AWS global infrastructure is built around AWS Regions and Availability Zones. AWS Regions provide multiple physically separated and isolated Availability Zones, which are connected with low-latency,

high-throughput, and highly redundant networking. With Availability Zones, you can design and operate applications and databases that automatically fail over between Availability Zones without interruption. Availability Zones are more highly available, fault tolerant, and scalable than traditional single or multiple data center infrastructures.

For more information about AWS Regions and Availability Zones, see [AWS Global Infrastructure](#).

In addition to the AWS global infrastructure, AWS Directory Service offers the ability to take manual snapshots of data at any point in time to help support your data resiliency and backup needs. For more information, see [Snapshot or Restore Your Directory \(p. 88\)](#).

Infrastructure Security in AWS Directory Service

As a managed service, AWS Directory Service is protected by the AWS global network security procedures that are described in the [Amazon Web Services: Overview of Security Processes](#) whitepaper.

You use AWS published API calls to access AWS Directory Service through the network. Clients must support Transport Layer Security (TLS) 1.0 or later. We recommend TLS 1.2 or later. Clients must also support cipher suites with perfect forward secrecy (PFS) such as Ephemeral Diffie-Hellman (DHE) or Elliptic Curve Ephemeral Diffie-Hellman (ECDHE). Most modern systems such as Java 7 and later support these modes.

Additionally, requests must be signed by using an access key ID and a secret access key that is associated with an IAM principal. Or you can use the [AWS Security Token Service](#) (AWS STS) to generate temporary security credentials to sign requests.

Service Level Agreement for AWS Directory Service

AWS Directory Service is a highly available service, and is built on AWS-managed infrastructure. It is backed by a service level agreement that defines our service availability policy.

For more information, see [Service Level Agreement for AWS Directory Service](#).

Region Availability for AWS Directory Service

The following table provides a list describing which region specific endpoints are supported by directory type.

Region Name	Region	Endpoint	Protocol	AWS Managed Microsoft AD	AD Connector	Simple AD
US East (Ohio)	us-east-2	ds.us-east-2.amazonaws.com	HTTPS	X	X	N/A
US East (N. Virginia)	us-east-1	ds.us-east-1.amazonaws.com	HTTPS	X	X	X
US West (N. California)	us-west-1	ds.us-west-1.amazonaws.com	HTTPS	X	X	N/A
US West (Oregon)	us-west-2	ds.us-west-2.amazonaws.com	HTTPS	X	X	X
Asia Pacific (Hong Kong) *	ap-east-1	ds.ap-east-1.amazonaws.com	HTTPS	X	X	N/A
Asia Pacific (Mumbai)	ap-south-1	ds.ap-south-1.amazonaws.com	HTTPS	X	X	N/A
Asia Pacific (Seoul)	ap-northeast-2	ds.ap-northeast-2.amazonaws.com	HTTPS	X	X	N/A
Asia Pacific (Singapore)	ap-southeast-1	ds.ap-southeast-1.amazonaws.com	HTTPS	X	X	X
Asia Pacific (Sydney)	ap-southeast-2	ds.ap-southeast-2.amazonaws.com	HTTPS	X	X	X
Asia Pacific (Tokyo)	ap-northeast-1	ds.ap-northeast-1.amazonaws.com	HTTPS	X	X	X
Canada (Central)	ca-central-1	ds.ca-central-1.amazonaws.com	HTTPS	X	X	N/A

Region Name	Region	Endpoint	Protocol	AWS Managed Microsoft AD	AD Connector	Simple AD
China (Beijing)	cn-north-1	ds.cn-north-1.amazonaws.com.cn	HTTPS	X	X	N/A
China (Ningxia)	cn-northwest-1	ds.cn-northwest-1.amazonaws.com.cn	HTTPS	X	X	N/A
Europe (Frankfurt)	eu-central-1	ds.eu-central-1.amazonaws.com	HTTPS	X	X	N/A
Europe (Ireland)	eu-west-1	ds.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com	HTTPS	X	X	X
Europe (London)	eu-west-2	ds.eu-west-2.amazonaws.com	HTTPS	X	X	N/A
Europe (Paris)	eu-west-3	ds.eu-west-3.amazonaws.com	HTTPS	X	X	N/A
Europe (Stockholm)	eu-north-1	ds.eu-north-1.amazonaws.com	HTTPS	X	X	N/A
South America (São Paulo)	sa-east-1	ds.sa-east-1.amazonaws.com	HTTPS	X	X	N/A
AWS GovCloud (US-West)	us-gov-west-1	ds.us-gov-west-1.amazonaws.com	HTTPS	X	X	N/A
AWS GovCloud (US-East)	us-gov-east-1	ds.us-gov-east-1.amazonaws.com	HTTPS	X	X	N/A

* The following AWS Managed Microsoft AD features are not currently supported in the Asia Pacific (Hong Kong) Region:

- Access URL for the directory
- Mapping users to IAM roles for access to the AWS Management Console
- Client-side secure LDAP (LDAPS)

For information about using AWS Directory Service in the AWS GovCloud (US-West) Region, see [AWS GovCloud \(US-West\) Endpoints](#).

For information about using AWS Directory Service in the China (Beijing) Region, see [China \(Beijing\) Region Endpoints](#).

Browser Compatibility

AWS applications and services such as Amazon WorkSpaces, Amazon WorkMail, Amazon Connect, Amazon Chime, Amazon WorkDocs, and AWS Single Sign-On all require valid sign-in credentials from a compatible browser before you can access them. The following table describes only the browsers and browser versions that are compatible for sign-ins.

Browser	Version	Compatibility
Microsoft Internet Explorer	Desktop IE versions 7 and below	Not compatible
	Desktop IE versions 8, 9, and 10	Compatible only when running Windows 7 or newer and TLS 1.1 enabled. See What is TLS? (p. 222) for more information.
	Desktop IE versions 11 and above	Compatible
	Mobile IE versions 10 and below	Not compatible
	Mobile IE versions 11 and above	Compatible
Microsoft Edge	All versions	Compatible
Mozilla Firefox	Firefox 23 and below	Not compatible
	Firefox 24 to 26	Compatible, but not by default.
	Firefox 27 and above	Compatible
Google Chrome	Google Chrome 21 and below	Not compatible
	Google Chrome 22 to 37	Compatible, but not by default.
	Google Chrome 38 and above	Compatible
Apple Safari	Desktop Safari versions 6 and below for OS X 10.8 (Mountain Lion) and below	Not compatible
	Desktop Safari versions 7 and higher for OS X 10.9 (Mavericks) and higher	Compatible
	Mobile Safari for iOS 4 and below	Not compatible
	Mobile Safari versions 5 and higher for iOS 5 and higher	Compatible

Now that you've verified you are using a supported version of your browser, we recommend that you also review the section below to verify your browser has been configured to use the Transport Layer Security (TLS) setting required by AWS.

What is TLS?

TLS is a protocol web browsers and other applications use to exchange data securely over a network. TLS ensures that a connection to a remote endpoint is the intended endpoint through encryption and endpoint identity verification. The versions of TLS, to date, are TLS 1.0, 1.1, 1.2 and 1.3.

Which TLS versions are supported by AWS SSO

AWS applications and services support TLS 1.1, 1.2 and 1.3 for secure sign-ins. As of October 30th 2019, TLS 1.0 is no longer supported so it is important that all browsers are configured to support TLS 1.1 or above. This means, you will not be able to sign-in to AWS applications and services if you access them while TLS 1.0 is enabled. For assistance making this change, contact your admin.

How do I enable supported TLS versions in my browser

It depends on your browser. Usually you can find this setting under the advanced settings area in your browser settings. For example, in Internet Explorer you'll find various TLS options under **Internet Properties**, the **Advanced** tab, and then under the **Security** section. Check your browser manufacturers Help web site for specific instructions.

Document History

The following table describes the important changes since the last release of the *AWS Directory Service Administrator Guide*.

- **Latest documentation update:** January 2, 2019

update-history-change	update-history-description	update-history-date
Password reset	Added content on how to reset user passwords using the AWS Management Console, Windows PowerShell and AWS CLI.	January 2, 2019
Directory sharing	Added documentation for using directory sharing with AWS Managed Microsoft AD.	September 25, 2018
Migrated content to new Amazon Cloud Directory Developer Guide	The Amazon Cloud Directory content previously in this guide has been moved to the new <i>Amazon Cloud Directory Developer Guide</i> .	June 21, 2018
Complete overhaul of the Admin Guide TOC	Reorganized the content to more directly map to customer needs and added new content where needed.	April 5, 2018
AWS delegated groups	Added list of AWS delegated groups that can be assigned to on-premises users.	March 8, 2018
Fine-grained password policies	Added new password policies content.	July 5, 2017
Additional domain controllers	Added information for adding more domain controllers to your AWS Managed Microsoft AD.	June 30, 2017
Tutorials	Added new tutorials for testing a AWS Managed Microsoft AD lab environment.	June 21, 2017
MFA with AWS Managed Microsoft AD	Added documentation for using MFA with AWS Managed Microsoft AD.	February 13, 2017
Amazon Cloud Directory	New directory type introduced.	January 26, 2017
Schema Extensions	Added documentation for schema extensions with AWS Directory Service for Microsoft Active Directory.	November 14, 2016

Major reorganization of the Directory Service Admin Guide	Reorganized the content to more directly map to customer needs.	November 14, 2016
SNS notifications	Added documentation for SNS notifications.	February 25, 2016
Authorization and Authentication	Added additional documentation for using IAM with Directory Services.	February 25, 2016
AWS Managed Microsoft AD	Added documentation for AWS Managed Microsoft AD, and combined guides into a single guide.	November 17, 2015
Allow Linux instances to be joined to a Simple AD directory	Added documentation for joining a Linux instance to a Simple AD directory.	July 23, 2015
Guide separation	The <i>AWS Directory Service administration guide</i> is split into separate guides, the <i>Simple AD guide</i> and the <i>AD Connector guide</i> .	July 14, 2015
Single sign-on support	Added single sign-on documentation.	March 31, 2015
New guide	This is the first release of the <i>AWS Directory Service Administration Guide</i> .	October 21, 2014